

# Modicon M580

## Hardware Reference Manual

09/2014

EIO0000001578.02

[www.schneider-electric.com](http://www.schneider-electric.com)



---

The information provided in this documentation contains general descriptions and/or technical characteristics of the performance of the products contained herein. This documentation is not intended as a substitute for and is not to be used for determining suitability or reliability of these products for specific user applications. It is the duty of any such user or integrator to perform the appropriate and complete risk analysis, evaluation and testing of the products with respect to the relevant specific application or use thereof. Neither Schneider Electric nor any of its affiliates or subsidiaries shall be responsible or liable for misuse of the information contained herein. If you have any suggestions for improvements or amendments or have found errors in this publication, please notify us.

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, without express written permission of Schneider Electric.

All pertinent state, regional, and local safety regulations must be observed when installing and using this product. For reasons of safety and to help ensure compliance with documented system data, only the manufacturer should perform repairs to components.

When devices are used for applications with technical safety requirements, the relevant instructions must be followed.

Failure to use Schneider Electric software or approved software with our hardware products may result in injury, harm, or improper operating results.

Failure to observe this information can result in injury or equipment damage.

© 2014 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

---

# Table of Contents

---



	<b>Safety Information</b> .....	<b>9</b>
	<b>About the Book</b> .....	<b>11</b>
<b>Part I</b>	<b>Hardware Elements in the Modicon M580 Local Rack</b> .....	<b>15</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>M580 CPUs</b> .....	<b>17</b>
1.1	BME P58 xxxx CPU Functional Characteristics .....	<b>18</b>
	Introduction .....	<b>19</b>
	Performance Characteristics .....	<b>21</b>
	Operating States .....	<b>24</b>
	Electrical Characteristics .....	<b>25</b>
	Real-Time Clock .....	<b>26</b>
	Addressing Field Buses .....	<b>29</b>
1.2	BME P58 xxxx CPU Physical Characteristics .....	<b>30</b>
	Position and Dimensions .....	<b>31</b>
	Front Panel .....	<b>32</b>
	LED Indications .....	<b>33</b>
	USB Port .....	<b>35</b>
	Ethernet Ports .....	<b>37</b>
	Connecting an M580 Device Network to the Control Network .....	<b>40</b>
	SD Memory Card .....	<b>42</b>
	Memory Card Access LED .....	<b>43</b>
	Firmware Upgrade .....	<b>45</b>
	(Hardened) Equipment .....	<b>46</b>
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>M580 Racks</b> .....	<b>49</b>
2.1	BME XBP xxxx Rack Description .....	<b>50</b>
	Local and Remote Racks .....	<b>51</b>
	X80 Rack Characteristics .....	<b>54</b>
	Extended Racks .....	<b>57</b>
	X80 Rack Extender Module .....	<b>60</b>
	Premium TSX RKY Extended Racks .....	<b>63</b>
	Premium Extended Rack Characteristics .....	<b>65</b>
	Addressing Premium Extended Racks .....	<b>67</b>
	Rack Extender Cables and Terminators .....	<b>69</b>
	Rack Firmware Upgrade .....	<b>72</b>

2.2	BME XBP xxxx Rack Characteristics . . . . .	73
	Electrical Characteristics . . . . .	74
	Rack Dimensions . . . . .	75
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>M580-Compatible Power Supply Modules . . . . .</b>	<b>77</b>
	Power Supply Modules . . . . .	78
	LED Display . . . . .	79
	<b>Reset</b> Button . . . . .	<b>80</b>
	Usable Power . . . . .	81
	Module Power Consumption . . . . .	83
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Standards, Certifications, and Conformity Tests . . . .</b>	<b>87</b>
	Standards and Certifications . . . . .	88
	Service Conditions and Recommendations Relating to Environment .	90
	Conformity Tests . . . . .	91
<b>Part II</b>	<b>Installing a Local Rack . . . . .</b>	<b>99</b>
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Installation and Assembly of M580 Racks and Extender Module . . . . .</b>	<b>101</b>
	Planning the Installation of the Local Rack . . . . .	102
	Mounting the Racks . . . . .	106
	Grounding the Rack and Power Supply Module . . . . .	108
	Grounding Installed Modules . . . . .	110
	BMX XEM 010 Protective Cover for Unused Module Slots . . . . .	111
	BMX XSP xxxx Protection Bar . . . . .	112
	Modicon X80 Rack Extender Module Installation. . . . .	114
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Installation of the Power Supply, CPU, and Modules in a M580 Rack . . . . .</b>	<b>121</b>
	Definition of Protection Devices at the Start of the Line. . . . .	122
	Power Supply, CPU, and Module Guidelines. . . . .	124
	Installing the CPU . . . . .	125
	Installing a Power Supply Module . . . . .	128
	Installing an SD Memory Card in a CPU . . . . .	129
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>M580 Diagnostics . . . . .</b>	<b>135</b>
	Blocking Conditions . . . . .	136
	Non-blocking Conditions . . . . .	138
	CPU or System Errors . . . . .	139
	CPU Application Compatibility . . . . .	140

<b>Part III</b>	<b>Configuring the CPU in Unity Pro</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>M580 CPU Configuration</b>	<b>143</b>
8.1	Unity Pro Projects	144
	Creating a Project in Unity Pro	145
	Configuring the Size and Location of Inputs and Outputs	147
	Project Management	148
8.2	Configuring the CPU with Unity Pro	150
	Unity Pro Configuration Tabs	151
	About Unity Pro Configuration	152
	<b>Security</b> Tab	153
	<b>IPConfig</b> Tab	156
	RSTP Tab	157
	<b>SNMP</b> Tab	159
	<b>NTP</b> Tab	161
	<b>Switch</b> Tab	163
	<b>QoS</b> Tab	164
	<b>Service Port</b> Tab	165
	<b>Advanced Settings</b> Tab	166
8.3	The Unity Pro FDT/DTM Interface	167
	About the Unity Pro <b>DTM Browser</b>	168
	<b>DTM Browser</b> Menu Commands	171
	Managing DTM Connections	175
	Field Bus Discovery Service	176
	Configuring DTM Properties	180
	Uploading and Downloading DTM-Based Applications	182
8.4	Configuring the M580 CPU with DTMs in Unity Pro	184
	About DTM Configuration in Unity Pro	185
	Accessing Channel Properties	186
	Configuring DHCP and FDR Address Servers	188
8.5	Diagnostics through the Unity Pro DTM Browser	191
	Introducing Diagnostics in the Unity Pro DTM	192
	Inputs	194
	Bandwidth Diagnostics	197
	RSTP Diagnostics	199
	Network Time Service Diagnostics	201
	Local Slave / Connection Diagnostics	203
	Local Slave or Connection I/O Value Diagnostics	206
	Logging	207

8.6	Online Action . . . . .	208
	Online Action . . . . .	209
	EtherNet/IP Objects Tab . . . . .	211
	Service Port Tab . . . . .	212
	Pinging a Network Device . . . . .	213
8.7	DTM Device Lists . . . . .	215
	<b>Device List</b> Configuration and Connection Summary . . . . .	216
	Device List Parameters . . . . .	219
	Device DDT Names for the M580 CPU . . . . .	223
8.8	Explicit Messaging . . . . .	224
	Sending Explicit Messages to EtherNet/IP Devices. . . . .	225
	Sending Explicit Messages to Modbus Devices. . . . .	227
8.9	Implicit Messaging . . . . .	229
	Setting Up Your Network . . . . .	230
	Adding an STB NIC 2212 Device. . . . .	231
	Configuring STB NIC 2212 Properties . . . . .	233
	Configuring EtherNet/IP Connections . . . . .	235
	Configuring I/O Items . . . . .	240
	EtherNet/IP Implicit Messaging . . . . .	254
8.10	Configuring the M580 CPU as an EtherNet/IP Adapter . . . . .	255
	Introducing the Local Slave . . . . .	256
	Local Slave Configuration Example . . . . .	258
	Enabling Local Slaves . . . . .	259
	Accessing Local Slaves with a Scanner. . . . .	260
	Local Slave Parameters . . . . .	262
	Working with Derived Data Type Variables . . . . .	266
8.11	Hardware Catalog . . . . .	268
	Introduction to the Hardware Catalog . . . . .	269
	Adding a DTM to the Unity Pro Hardware Catalog . . . . .	270
	Adding an EDS File to the Hardware Catalog . . . . .	271
	Updating the Hardware Catalog. . . . .	274
	Removing an EDS File from the Hardware Catalog. . . . .	275
8.12	M580 CPU Embedded Web Pages . . . . .	277
	Introducing the Embedded Web Pages . . . . .	278
	CPU Diagnostic Web Pages . . . . .	279
	Status Summary. . . . .	281
	Performance. . . . .	283
	Port Statistics . . . . .	285

	I/O Scanner .....	286
	Messaging .....	288
	QoS .....	289
	Network Time Service .....	290
	Redundancy .....	292
	Alarm Viewer .....	293
<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>M580 CPU Programming and Operating Modes .....</b>	<b>295</b>
9.1	I/O and Task Management .....	296
	I/O Exchanges .....	297
	CPU Tasks .....	299
9.2	BME P58 xxxx CPU Memory Structure .....	300
	Memory Structure .....	300
9.3	BME P58 xxxx CPU Operating Modes .....	301
	Managing <b>Run/Stop</b> Input .....	302
	Power Cut and Restore .....	303
	Cold Start .....	305
	Warm Restart .....	308
<b>Appendices</b>	.....	<b>311</b>
<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Derived Data Types .....</b>	<b>313</b>
	Device DDT Names for the M580 CPU .....	313
<b>Glossary</b>	.....	<b>321</b>
<b>Index</b>	.....	<b>329</b>





# Safety Information



## Important Information

### NOTICE

Read these instructions carefully, and look at the equipment to become familiar with the device before trying to install, operate, or maintain it. The following special messages may appear throughout this documentation or on the equipment to warn of potential hazards or to call attention to information that clarifies or simplifies a procedure.



The addition of this symbol to a “Danger” or “Warning” safety label indicates that an electrical hazard exists which will result in personal injury if the instructions are not followed.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

### **DANGER**

**DANGER** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **will result in** death or serious injury.

### **WARNING**

**WARNING** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in** death or serious injury.

### **CAUTION**

**CAUTION** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in** minor or moderate injury.

### **NOTICE**

**NOTICE** is used to address practices not related to physical injury.

---

## PLEASE NOTE

Electrical equipment should be installed, operated, serviced, and maintained only by qualified personnel. No responsibility is assumed by Schneider Electric for any consequences arising out of the use of this material.

A qualified person is one who has skills and knowledge related to the construction and operation of electrical equipment and its installation, and has received safety training to recognize and avoid the hazards involved.

---

# About the Book

---



## At a Glance

### Document Scope

PlantStruxure is a Schneider Electric program designed to address the key challenges of many different types of users, including plant managers, operations managers, engineers, maintenance teams, and operators, by delivering a system that is scalable, flexible, integrated, and collaborative.

This document provides detailed information about the M580 programmable automation controller (PAC), power supplies, and racks, as well as the following:

- installation of a local rack in the M580 system
- configuration of CPUs
- Ethernet I/O scanner capabilities of the CPU, including both RIO and DIO

### Validity Note

This document is valid for Unity Pro 8.1 or later.

The technical characteristics of the devices described in this document also appear online. To access this information online:

Step	Action
1	Go to the Schneider Electric home page <a href="http://www.schneider-electric.com">www.schneider-electric.com</a> .
2	In the <b>Search</b> box type the reference of a product or the name of a product range. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Do not include blank spaces in the model number/product range.</li><li>• To get information on grouping similar modules, use asterisks (*).</li></ul>
3	If you entered a reference, go to the <b>Product Datasheets</b> search results and click on the reference that interests you. If you entered the name of a product range, go to the <b>Product Ranges</b> search results and click on the product range that interests you.
4	If more than one reference appears in the <b>Products</b> search results, click on the reference that interests you.
5	Depending on the size of your screen, you may need to scroll down to see the data sheet.
6	To save or print a data sheet as a .pdf file, click <b>Download XXX product datasheet</b> .

The characteristics that are presented in this manual should be the same as those characteristics that appear online. In line with our policy of constant improvement, we may revise content over time to improve clarity and accuracy. If you see a difference between the manual and online information, use the online information as your reference.


## Related Documents

Title of Documentation	Reference Number
Control Panel Technical Guide How to protect a machine from malfunctions due to electromagnetic disturbance	CPTG003_EN (English), CPTG003_FR (French)
Grounding and Electromagnetic Compatibility of PLC Systems (Basic Principles and Measures) User Manual	33002439 (English), 33002440 (French), 33002441 (German), 33003702 (Italian), 33002442 (Spanish), 33003703 (Chinese)
Modicon M580 System Planning Guide	HRB62666 (English), HRB65318 (French), HRB65319 (German), HRB65320 (Italian), HRB65321 (Spanish), HRB65322 (Chinese)
Modicon M580 BME NOC 03•1 Ethernet Communication Module Installation and Configuration Guide	HRB62665 (English), HRB65311 (French), HRB65313 (German), HRB65314 (Italian), HRB65315 (Spanish), HRB65316 (Chinese)
Modicon M580 Remote I/O Modules Installation and Configuration Guide	EIO0000001584 (English), EIO0000001585 (French), EIO0000001586 (German), EIO0000001588 (Italian), EIO0000001587 (Spanish), EIO0000001589 (Chinese)
Modicon eX80 BME AHI 0812 HART Analog Input Module & BME AHO 0412 HART Analog Output Module User Guide	EAV16400 (English), EAV28404 (French), EAV28384 (German), EAV28413 (Italian), EAV28360 (Spanish), EAV28417 (Chinese)
Unity Loader User Manual	33003805 (English), 33003806 (French), 33003807 (German), 33003809 (Italian), 33003808 (Spanish), 33003810 (Chinese)
Unity Pro Operating Modes	33003101 (English), 33003102 (French), 33003103 (German), 33003696 (Italian), 33003104 (Spanish), 33003697 (Chinese)

Title of Documentation	Reference Number
Unity Pro Program Languages and Structure Reference Manual	35006144 (English), 35006145 (French), 35006146 (German), 35013361 (Italian), 35006147 (Spanish), 35013362 (Chinese)

You can download these technical publications and other technical information from our website at [www.schneider-electric.com](http://www.schneider-electric.com).

## Product Related Information

 <b>WARNING</b>
<p><b>UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION</b></p> <p>The application of this product requires expertise in the design and programming of control systems. Only persons with such expertise are allowed to program, install, alter, and apply this product.</p> <p>Follow all local and national safety codes and standards.</p> <p><b>Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.</b></p>



---

# Part I

## Hardware Elements in the Modicon M580 Local Rack

---

### Introduction

This part provides information on Modicon M580 PACs, power supply modules, and racks on which system modules are mounted. The physical and operational characteristics of these elements are described.

### What Is in This Part?

This part contains the following chapters:

Chapter	Chapter Name	Page
1	M580 CPUs	17
2	M580 Racks	49
3	M580-Compatible Power Supply Modules	77
4	Standards, Certifications, and Conformity Tests	87





---

# Chapter 1

## M580 CPUs

---

### Introduction

This chapter introduces you to the physical and functional characteristics of the M580 CPUs.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
1.1	BME P58 xxxx CPU Functional Characteristics	18
1.2	BME P58 xxxx CPU Physical Characteristics	30

# Section 1.1

## BME P58 xxxx CPU Functional Characteristics

### Introduction

This section describes the functional characteristics of the M580 CPUs. Performance, electrical characteristics, and memory capacities of the different CPU modules are detailed.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Introduction	19
Performance Characteristics	21
Operating States	24
Electrical Characteristics	25
Real-Time Clock	26
Addressing Field Buses	29

## Introduction

### Role of the CPU in a Control System

In a modular PAC, the CPU controls and processes the application. The local rack identifies the rack that contains the CPU. In addition to the CPU, the local rack contains a power supply module and may contain communication processing modules and input/output (I/O) modules.

The CPU is in charge of:

- configuring all modules and device present in the PAC configuration
- processing the application
- reading the inputs at the beginning of tasks and applying the outputs at the end of tasks
- managing explicit and implicit communications

Modules may reside in the local rack with the CPU or they may be installed in remote drops at a distance from the local rack. The CPU has built-in capabilities to act as the RIO processor that manages communications between the CPU and the X80 EIO adapter modules that are installed in each remote drop.

Devices can be connected to the PAC network as either DIO clouds or DIO sub-rings.

For detailed information about the various architectures that the M580 network supports, refer to the *Modicon M580 System Planning Guide*. For a detailed description of the X80 EIO adapter modules and the options they provide for installing a remote drop, refer to the *Modicon M580 Remote I/O Modules Installation and Configuration Guide*.

### Functional Considerations

The CPU solves control logic for the I/O modules and distributed equipment in the system. You can choose a CPU based on several operating characteristics:

- memory size
- processing power: the number of I/O points or channels that it can manage ([see page 21](#))
- the speed at which the CPU can execute the control logic ([see page 23](#))
- communication capabilities: the types of Ethernet ports on the CPU ([see page 37](#))
- the number of local I/O modules and RIO drops that it can support ([see page 21](#))
- the ability to function in harsh environments: (3 CPU modules are hardened to operate over extended temperature ranges and in dirty or corrosive environments ([see page 46](#)))

### CPU Modules

There are seven CPU modules, three of which can be ordered as standard or industrially hardened modules. Industrially hardened modules have the letter H appended to the module name ([see page 46](#)).

- BME P58 1020 and BME P58 1020 H
- BME P58 2020 and BME P58 2020 H
- BME P58 2040 and BME P58 2040 H
- BME P58 3020
- BME P58 3040

- BME P58 4020
- BME P58 4040

## Performance Characteristics

All CPUs use an embedded DIO scanner service to manage distributed equipment on the M580 device network. Only select CPUs use an embedded Ethernet I/O scanner service to manage RIO drops as well.

To manage RIO drops on the device network, select one of the following CPUs with Ethernet I/O scanner service:

- BME P58 2040 or BME P58 2040 H
- BME P58 3040
- BME P58 4040

Embedded scanner services are configured via CPU IP configuration ([see page 156](#)).

Here are some of the key characteristics of the M580 CPUs:

	BME P58 Modules						
	1020(H)	2020(H)	2040(H)	3020	3040	4020	4040
maximum number of discrete I/O channels	1024	2048	2048	3072	3072	4096	4096
maximum number of analog I/O channels	256	512	512	768	768	1024	1024
maximum number of expert channels	36	72	72	108	108	144	144
maximum number of distributed devices	64	128	64	128	64	128	64
maximum number of Ethernet communication modules (including BME NOC 03*1 modules, but not the CPU)	2	2	2	3	3	4	4
maximum number of local racks (main rack + extension rack)	4	4	4	8	8	8	8
maximum number of RIO drops (maximum of 2 racks per drop) (main rack + extension rack)	–	–	8	–	16	–	16
Ethernet ports:							
• service	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
• RIO or distributed equipment	–	–	2	–	2	–	2
• distributed equipment	2	2	–	2	–	2	–
- not available							
<b>NOTE:</b> These characteristics represent the maximum values that a specific CPU can manage in a M580 system.							

## Maximum Memory Size for RIO and DIO Scanning

Program and data memory capacity:

Memory Size	CPU Modules						
	1020 / 1020 H	2020 / 2020 H	2040 / 2040 H	3020	3040	4020	4040
application global size (Kbytes)	4598	9048	9048	13558	13558	18678	18678

Maximum memory size per area:

Memory Size	CPU Modules						
	1020 / 1020 H	2020 / 2020 H	2040 / 2040 H	3020	3040	4020	4040
maximum for saved data (Kbytes) <sup>(1.)</sup>	384	768	768	1024	1024	2048	2048
maximum for unsaved data (Kbytes)	128	128	128	256	256	256	256
maximum for program (Kbytes)	4096	8162	8162	12288	12288	16384	16384
1. 10 Kbytes are reserved for the system							

Maximum and default size of located data according to the CPU (in Kbytes):

Object Types	Address	CPU Modules						
		1020 / 1020 H	2020 / 2020 H	2040 / 2040 H	3020	3040	4020	4040
internal bits	%Mi maximum	32634	32634	32634	32634	32634	32634	32634
	%Mi default	512	512	512	512	512	512	512
input/output bits	%Ir.m.c %Qr.m.c	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)
system bits	%Si	128	128	128	128	128	128	128
internal words	%MWi maximum	32464	32464	32464	65232	65232	65232	65232
	%MWi default	1024	1024	1024	2048	2048	2048	2048
1 Memory size depends on the equipment configuration declared (I/O modules).								

## Size of Non-Located Data Memory

Non-located data types are as follows:

- elementary data type (EDT)
- derived data type (DDT)
- derived function block (DFB) and elementary function block (EFB)

The size limit of non-located data is the global maximum memory size for data ([see page 22](#)) minus the size consumed by located data.

### Communication Performance

	BME P58 Modules						
	1020(H)	2020(H)	2040(H)	3020	3040	4020	4040
simultaneous EF processed per cycle (max.)	16	32	32	48	48	80	80

### Application Code Execution Performance

	BME P58 Modules						
	1020(H)	2020(H)	2040(H)	3020	3040	4020	4040
boolean application execution (Kinst/ms <sup>(1)</sup> )	10	10	10	20	20	40	40
typical execution (Kinst/ms <sup>(1.)</sup> ) (65% boolean instructions + 35% fixed arithmetic)	7.5	7.5	7.5	15	15	30	30
<b>1</b> Kinst/ms: 1,024 instructions per millisecond							

## Operating States

### Operating States

All CPUs have the following operating states:

Operating State	Description
AUTOTEST	The CPU is executing its internal self-tests. <b>NOTE:</b> If extended racks are connected to the main local rack and line terminators are not plugged into the unused connectors on the rack extender module, the CPU remains in <b>AUTOTEST</b> after the self-tests have completed.
NOCONF	The application program is not valid.
STOP	The CPU has a valid application, but it is stopped. The CPU set itself to predefined STOP state parameters, and can be restarted when you are ready.
IDLE	The CPU has a valid application and is able to solve logic, but the application is not requiring CPU processing (the CPU has never been in RUN state). This state is not visible.
HALT	The CPU has an application, but it has stopped operating because it encountered an unexpected blocking condition, which puts the CPU in a HALT state, resulting in a recoverable ( <a href="#">see page 138</a> ) or nonrecoverable condition ( <a href="#">see page 136</a> ).
RUN	The CPU is executing the application program.
WAIT	The CPU is in a transitory state while it backs up data when a power down condition is detected. The CPU starts again only when power is restored and the supply reserve is replenished. As it is a transitory state, it may not be viewed. The CPU performs a warm restart ( <a href="#">see page 308</a> ) to exit the WAIT state.
ERROR	The CPU is stopped because a hardware or system error is detected. When the system is ready to be restarted, the CPU performs a cold start ( <a href="#">see page 306</a> ) to exit the ERROR state.
OS DOWNLOAD	A CPU firmware download is in progress.

### Monitoring the CPU Operating State

The LEDs on the CPU front panel provide indications of its operating state ([see page 33](#)).



---

## Electrical Characteristics

### Introduction

The power supply module provides current to the modules installed on the local rack, including the CPU. The CPU current consumption contributes to the total rack consumption.

### CPU Power Consumption

Typical CPU consumption with a 24 Vdc power supply:

CPU Module	Typical Consumption
BME P58 10•0	270 mA
BME P58 20•0	270 mA
BME P58 30•0	295 mA
BME P58 40•0	295 mA

### Mean Time Between Failures (MTBF)

For all CPU modules, the MTBF (measured at 30 °C continuous) is 600,000 hours.

## Real-Time Clock

### Introduction

Your CPU has a real-time clock that:

- provides the current date and time
- displays the date and time of the last application shut-down

### Clock Accuracy

The resolution of the real-time clock is 1 ms. The clock accuracy is affected by the operating temperature of the application:

Operating Temperature	Maximum Daily Drift (Seconds/Day)	Maximum Yearly Drift (Minutes/Year)
25 °C (77 °F) stabilized	+/- 2.6	+/- 17.4
0...60 °C (32...140 °F)	+/- 5.2	+/-33.1

### Clock Back-Up

The accuracy of the real-time clock is maintained for 4 weeks when the CPU power is turned off if the temperature is below 45 °C (113 °F). If the temperature is higher, the back-up time is shorter. The real-time clock back-up does not need any maintenance.

If the back-up power is too low, system bit %S51 is set to 1. This value indicates a loss of time when the power supply was OFF.

### Current Date and Time

The CPU updates the current date and time in the system words %SW49–%SW53 and %SW70. This data is in BCD.

**NOTE:** For **M580** PACs, the current time is in universal coordinated time (UTC)). If local time is needed, use the `RRTC_DT` function.

### Accessing the Date and Time

You can access the date and time:

- on the CPU debug screen
- in the program

To read the current date and time, read system words %SW49 through %SW53. This operation sets system bit %S50 to 0.

To write the current date and time, write system words %SW50 through %SW53. This operation sets system bit %S50 to 1.

When system bit %S59 is set to 1, you can increment or decrement the current date and time values with system word %SW59.

The function performed by each bit in word %SW59 is:

Bit	Function
0	increments the day of the week
1	increments the seconds
2	increments the minutes
3	increments the hours
4	increments the days
5	increments the months
6	increments the years
7	increments the centuries
8	decrements the day of the week
9	decrements the seconds
10	decrements the minutes
11	decrements the hours
12	decrements the days
13	decrements the months
14	decrements the years
15	decrements the centuries

**NOTE:** The preceeding functions are performed when system bit %S59 is set to 1.

### Determining the Date and Time of the Last Application Shutdown

The date and time of the last application shutdown are displayed in system words %SW54 through %SW58. They are displayed in BCD.

System Word	Most Significant Byte	Least Significant Byte
%SW54	seconds (0 to 59)	00
%SW55	hours (0 to 23)	minutes (0 to 59)
%SW56	month (1 to 12)	day in the month (1 to 31)
%SW57	century (0 to 99)	year (0 to 99)
%SW58	day of the week (1 to 7)	reason for the last application shutdown

The reason for the last application shutdown can be displayed by reading the least significant byte of system word %SW58, which can have the following values (in BCD):

Word%SW58 Value	Definition
1	application switched to STOP mode

Word%SW58 Value	Definition
2	application stopped by watchdog
4	power loss
5	stop on detected hardware error
6	<p>stop when errors such as the following are detected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● software error (HALT instruction)</li><li>● SFC error</li><li>● application CRC checksum error</li><li>● undefined system function call</li></ul> <p>Details on the software detected fault type are stored in %SW125.</p>

## Addressing Field Buses

### Addressing Field Buses

The following field buses can be addressed by either configuring the appropriate protocol or using dedicated modules and devices.

Field Bus	Addressing Method
AS-i	AS-Interface bus is addressed with a Modicon X80 BMX EIA 0100 module.
CANopen	<p>CANopen is addressed with an Advantys STB island configured from Unity Pro.</p> <p>The Advantys STB island is connected to the Ethernet DIO network with one of the following modules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● STB NIC 2212</li> <li>● STB NIP 2212</li> <li>● STB NIP 2311</li> </ul> <p>The CANopen modules are linked to the STB XBE 2100 module on the Advantys STB island</p>
HART	<p>HART communication protocol can be addressed using either the eX80 HART modules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● BME AHI 0812 HART analog input module</li> <li>● BME AHO 0412 HART analog output module</li> </ul> <p>or</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● an Advantys STB island with an STB NIP 2311 EtherNet/IP network interface module and an STB AHI 8321 HART interface module.</li> </ul>
Modbus TCP	Modbus TCP devices are connected to the Ethernet DIO network.
Modbus Plus	Modbus Plus is supported using a gateway module like TCSEGDB23F24FA or TCSEGDB23F24FK.
PROFIBUS-DP	A PROFIBUS remote master is connected to the Ethernet DIO network. The process variables are exchanged via the DIO scanner service in the CPU. PROFIBUS gateway modules: TCSEGA23F14F or TCSEGA23F14FK
PROFIBUS-PA	A PROFIBUS remote master and a DP/PA interface are connected to an Ethernet DIO network. The process variables are exchanged via the DIO scanner service in the CPU. PROFIBUS gateway modules: TCSEGA23F14F or TCSEGA23F14FK

---

# Section 1.2

## BME P58 xxxx CPU Physical Characteristics

---

**Introduction**

This section describes the physical elements that are displayed on the front panel of the M580 CPU's. The various communication ports, LED diagnostic information, and several options available for industrial hardening and memory back-up are detailed.

**What Is in This Section?**

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Position and Dimensions	31
Front Panel	32
LED Indications	33
USB Port	35
Ethernet Ports	37
Connecting an M580 Device Network to the Control Network	40
SD Memory Card	42
Memory Card Access LED	43
Firmware Upgrade	45
(Hardened) Equipment	46

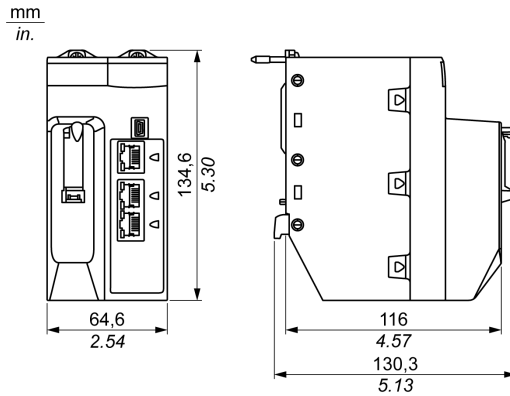
## Position and Dimensions

### Position on the Local Rack

Every M580 system requires 1 CPU module. The CPU is installed in the 2 module-slot position directly to the right of the power supply in the main local rack. The CPU cannot be put in any other slot location or any other rack. If there are extended racks in the local rack configuration, assign address 00 to the rack with the CPU.

### Dimensions

Front and side dimensions:



#### NOTE:

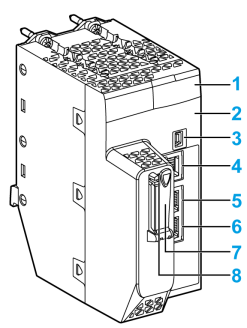
Consider the height of the CPU when you are planning the installation of the local rack. The CPU extends below the lower edge of the rack by:


- 29.49 mm (1.161 in.) for an Ethernet rack
- 30.9 mm (1.217 in.) for an X Bus rack

Front Panel

BME P58 CPU has a similar front panel. Depending on the CPU you choose, the following differences are:

- BME P58 020: The embedded Ethernet I/O scanner service supports DIO only.
- BME P58 40: The embedded Ethernet I/O scanner service supports both RIO and DIO.



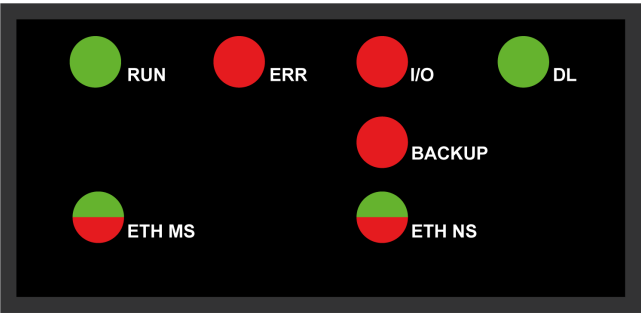
Item	Marking	Description
1	–	LED display ( <a href="#">see page 33</a> ) for CPU status and diagnostics
2	<b>Eth MAC Address</b> <b>xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx</b>	media access control (MAC) address assigned to the CPU, which is a string of six 2-digit hexadecimal numbers separated by dots
	<b>IP ADDRESS: . . .</b>	blank space for you to write the IP address assigned to the CPU
3		mini-B USB connector ( <a href="#">see page 35</a> ) to which you can attach a Unity Pro program, a loader terminal, or an HMI
4	<b>Service</b>	RJ45 Ethernet connector ( <a href="#">see page 37</a> ) for the service port
5	<b>Device Network</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● BME P58 020: dual RJ45 Ethernet connectors (<a href="#">see page 37</a>) that support distributed equipment only</li><li>● BME P58 40: dual RJ45 Ethernet connectors (<a href="#">see page 37</a>) that support distributed equipment <b>and</b> RIO drops</li></ul>
6		
7	–	SD memory card ( <a href="#">see page 42</a> ) slot
8	–	green LED that indicates the following memory card status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● steady ON when the CPU has access to the SD memory card</li><li>● blinks when the CPU attempts to access the memory card</li></ul>



# LED Indications

## LED Display

A 7-LED display is located on the front panel of the CPU:







## LED Descriptions

LED Indicator	Description
<b>RUN</b>	<b>ON:</b> The CPU is in RUN state.
<b>ERR</b>	<b>ON:</b> The CPU or system has detected an error.
<b>I/O</b>	<b>ON:</b> The CPU or system has detected an error in one or more I/O modules.
<b>DL (download)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>blinking:</b> firmware upgrade in progress</li> <li>● <b>OFF:</b> no firmware upgrade in progress</li> </ul>
<b>BACKUP</b>	<p><b>ON:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The memory card or CPU flash memory is missing or inoperable.</li> <li>● The memory card is not usable (bad format, unrecognized type).</li> <li>● The memory card or CPU flash memory content is inconsistent with the current application.</li> <li>● The memory card has been removed and reinserted.</li> </ul> <p><b>OFF:</b> The memory card or CPU flash memory content is valid, and the application in the execution memory is identical.</p>
<b>ETH MS</b>	MOD STATUS: indicates the module status of the CPU.
<b>ETH NS</b>	NET STATUS: indicates the network status of the CPU.





























The following table describes the LED indicator patterns:

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
	off		steady red

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
	steady green		blinking red
	blinking green		blinking red/green

### LED Diagnostic Indications

The LEDs provide detailed diagnostic information when you observe their pattern in combination:

Condition	CPU State	RUN	ERR	I/O	ETH MS	ETH NS
power on	autotest					
not configured (before getting a valid IP address or configuration is invalid)	NOCONF					any pattern
configured	STOP			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>off</b>: no error detected</li> <li>• <b>steady red</b>: error detected in a module or a channel</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>off</b>: invalid IP adress</li> <li>• <b>steady red</b>: duplicate IP address</li> <li>• <b>blinking green</b>: valid IP address but no EtherNet/IP connection</li> <li>• <b>steady green</b>: EtherNet/IP connection established</li> </ul>
	RUN					
recoverable detected error	HALT			any pattern		any pattern
unrecoverable detected error	–					
power off	–					

# USB Port

## Introduction

The USB port is a high-speed, mini-B USB connector, version 2.0 (480 Mbps) that can be used for a Unity Pro program or human-machine interface (HMI) panel. The USB port can connect to another USB port, version 1.1 or later.

**NOTE:** Install M580 USB drivers before connecting USB cable between the CPU and the PC.

## Transparency

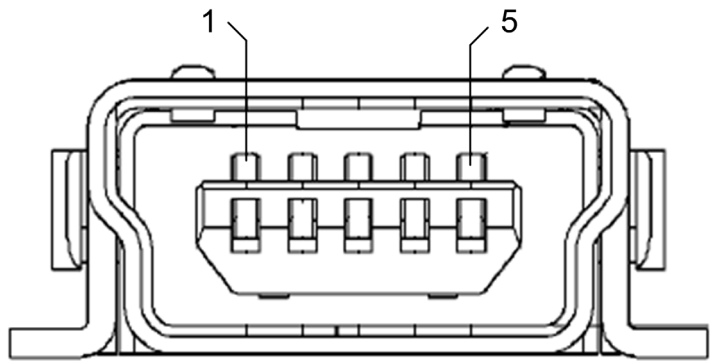
If your system requires transparency between the device connected to the USB port and the M580 device network, add a persistent static route in the PC routing table.

Example of a command to address a device network with IP address `x.x.0.0` (for Windows):

```
route add x.x.0.0 mask 255.255.0.0 90.0.0.1 -p
```

## Pin Assignments

The USB port has the following pin positions and pinouts:



Pin	Description
1	VBus
2	D-
3	D+
4	not connected
5	ground
shell	chassis ground

## Cables

Use the following USB cables to connect the panel to the CPU (a type A connector on one side and the mini-B USB on the other side):

- BMX XCA USB 018: 1.8 m (5.91 ft)
- BMX XCA USB 045: 4.5 m (14.76 ft)

In a fixed assembly with an XBT-type console connected to the CPU, connect the USB cable to a protection bar ([see page 112](#)). Use the exposed part of the shield or the metal lug on the BMX XCA cable to make the connection.

# Ethernet Ports

## Introduction

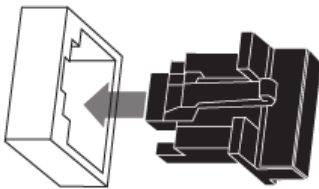
There are three RJ45 Ethernet ports on the front of the CPU: one service port, and two device network ports. The ports share common characteristics as described below.

## Common Characteristics

All three ports have the same RJ45 connector and use the same type of Ethernet cables.

**NOTE:** The three Ethernet ports are connected to chassis ground, and the system requires an equipotential ground (*see page 108*).

**NOTE:** To keep dust from entering the unused Ethernet ports, cover the unused ports with the stopper:



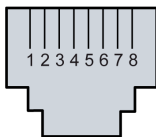
Each RJ45 connector has a pair of LED indicators:



The **ACT** LED is green, and the **LNK** LED may illuminate in either green or yellow.

LED	LED Status	Description
<b>ACT</b>	OFF	No activity is indicated on the Ethernet connection.
	ON / blinking green	Data is being transmitted and received on the Ethernet connection.
<b>LNK</b>	OFF	No link is established at this connection.
	ON green	A 100 Mbps link* is established at this connection.
	ON yellow	A 10 Mbps link* is established at this connection.
* The 10/100 Mbps links support both half-duplex and full-duplex data transfer and autonegotiation.		

The pin positions, pinouts, and cable connections are the same on all three RJ45 Ethernet ports:



Pin	Description
1	TD+
2	TD-
3	RD+
4	not connected
5	not connected
6	RD-
7	not connected
8	not connected
<b>Note:</b> The TD pins (pins 1 and 2) and the RD pins (pins 3 and 6) can be reversed, allowing the exclusive use of straight-through cables.	

The ports have an auto MDIX capability that automatically detects the direction of the transmission.

Choose from the following Ethernet cables to connect to the Ethernet ports:

- TCS ECN 3M3M 05S2: Cat 5E Ethernet straight-through shielded cable, rated for industrial use, CE- or UL-compliant
- TCS ECN 3M3M ....: Cat 5E Ethernet straight-through shielded cable, rated for industrial use, CE- or UL-compliant
- TCS ECE 3M3M ....: Cat 5E Ethernet straight-through shielded cable, rated for industrial use, CE-compliant
- TCS ECU 3M3M ....: Cat 5E Ethernet straight-through shielded cable, rated for industrial use, UL-compliant

The maximum length for a copper cable is 100 m. For distances greater than 100 m, use fiber optic cable. The CPU does not have any fiber ports on it. You may use dual ring switches (DRSs) or BMX NRP .... fiber converter modules to handle the copper-fiber conversion.

## Service Port

The service port is the uppermost of the three Ethernet ports on the front panel of the CPU. This port can be used:

- to provide an access point that other devices or systems can use to monitor or communicate with the M580 CPU
- as a standalone DIO port that can support a star, daisy chain, or mesh topology of distributed equipment
- to mirror the CPU ports for Ethernet diagnostics. The service tool that views activity on the mirrored port may be a PC or an HMI device.

**NOTE:** The service port may not provide full performance and features that the **Device Network** ports on the CPU provide.

## Device Network Dual Ports

When a CPU does not support RIO scanning, the two ports below the service port marked **Device Network** are DIO ports.

The following CPUs do not support RIO scanning:

- BME P58 1020 and BME P58 1020 H
- BME P58 2020 and BME P58 2020 H
- BME P58 3020
- BME P58 4020

You may use a **Device Network** port to support a star, daisy chain, or mesh topology of distributed equipment. You may use both **Device Network** ports to support a ring topology.

Refer to the *Modicon M580 System Planning Guide* for details regarding distributed equipment architectures.

When a CPU supports RIO scanning, the two ports below the service port marked **Device Network** are RIO ports.

The following CPUs support RIO scanning:

- BME P58 2040 and BME P58 2040 H
- BME P58 3040
- BME P58 4040

When used as RIO ports, both ports connect the CPU to the main ring in an Ethernet daisy-chain loop or ring.

Refer to the *Modicon M580 System Planning Guide* for details regarding RIO architectures.

## Connecting an M580 Device Network to the Control Network

### Introduction

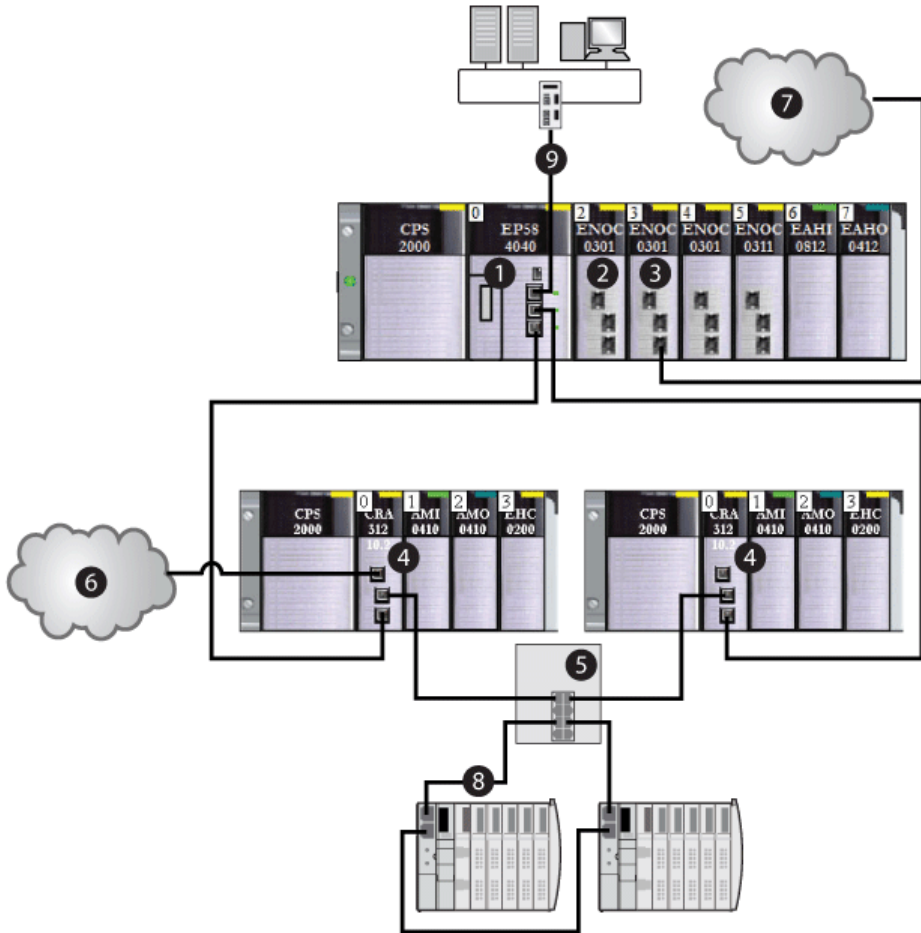
Via the service port on a CPU, connect your device network to the control network. The following figure shows a device network connected to a switch on the control network, where a SCADA system can be used to monitor and communicate with the device network.

#### **NOTE:**

Do not connect the service ports on different CPUs together through the control network.

- If transparency is needed between a device network and the control network, make the connection with a switch as shown in the following figure.
- If transparency is not needed, use a BME NOC 03•1 Ethernet communication module and configure the module in isolated mode.





- 1 CPU managing RIO (4) within the device network
- 2 BME NOC 03•1 module (with the Ethernet backplane connection enabled) managing distributed equipment within the device network (6 & 8)
- 3 BME NOC 03•1 module (with the Ethernet backplane connection disabled) managing the isolated DIO cloud (7)
- 4 RIO drop on the device network
- 5 DRS on the device network connecting (8) to the main ring
- 6 DIO cloud on the device network, connected to the service port of a BM• CRA 312 •0 X80 EIO adapter module
- 7 DIO cloud managed by (3)
- 8 DIO sub-ring connected to the main ring via (5)
- 9 connection from the service port of the CPU (1) to the control network

## SD Memory Card

### BMXRMS004GPF SD Memory Card

The SD memory card is an option that can be used for application and data storage. The SD memory card slot in the M580 CPU housing is behind a door (see page 32).

Use a BMXRMS004GPF memory card in your CPU. It is a 4 GB, Class A card rated for industrial use. Other memory cards, such as those used in the M340 CPUs, are not compatible with the M580 CPUs.

**NOTE:**

If you insert an incompatible SD memory card in the CPU:

- The CPU remains in NO\_CONF state.
- The CPU **BACKUP** LED turns ON.
- The memory card access LED remains OFF.

**NOTE:** The BMXRMS004GPF memory card is formatted specifically for the M580 CPUs. If you use this card with another CPU or tool, the card may not be recognized.

### Memory Card Characteristics

global memory size	4 GB
application backup size	410 MB
data storage size	3.6 GB
write/erase cycles (typical)	100,000
operating temperature range	–40...+85 °C (–40...+185 °F)
file retention time	10 years
memory zone for FTP access	data storage directory only

**NOTE:** Due to formatting, wearout, and other internal mechanisms, the actual available capacity of the memory card is slightly lower than its global size.

### Formatting the Memory Card

The formatting procedure is described in *Formatting the Memory Card* topic in the *Unity Pro System Block Library*.

## Memory Card Access LED

### Introduction

The green memory card access LED underneath the SD memory card door indicates the CPU access to the memory card when a card is inserted. This LED can be seen when the door is open.

### Dedicated LED Meanings









By itself, the **memory card access** LEDs have the following meanings:









LED Status	Description
ON	The memory card is recognized, but the CPU is not accessing it.
blinking	The CPU is accessing the memory card.
OFF	The memory card can be removed from the CPU slot or the CPU does not recognize the memory card.

**NOTE:** Confirm that the LED is OFF before you remove the card from the slot.





### Combined LED Meanings

The LED also illuminates together with the **BACKUP** LED ([see page 33](#)). Their combined patterns indicate the following diagnostic information:

Memory Card Status	Conditions	CPU State	Memory Card Access LED	BACKUP LED
no memory card in the slot	–	no configuration		
memory card not OK	–	no configuration		
memory card without project	–	no configuration		
memory card with a non-compatible project	–	no configuration		
– no specific circumstances or CPU state				

Memory Card Status	Conditions	CPU State	Memory Card Access LED	BACKUP LED
memory card with a compatible project	An error is detected when the project is restored from the memory card to the CPU RAM.	no configuration	during transfer: 	during transfer: 
			end of transfer: 	end of transfer: 
	No error is detected when the project is restored from the memory card to the CPU RAM.	–	during transfer: 	during transfer: 
			end of transfer: 	end of transfer: 
– no specific circumstances or CPU state				

The following legend shows the different LED patterns:

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	off		steady red
	steady green		blinking green

## Firmware Upgrade

### Introduction

You can upgrade the CPU firmware by downloading a new firmware version with Unity Loader.

The firmware download can be performed by connecting to either of the following:

- CPU mini-B USB connector (*see page 35*)
- CPU **Service** port (*see page 39*)
- Ethernet network

Refer to the Unity Loader manual for a description of the download procedure (see *Unity Loader, a SoCollaborative software User Manual*).

### Enabling CPU Firmware Upgrade

To enable the firmware upgrade, check the CPU security settings (*see page 153*).

### Firmware File

The firmware file is a \*.ldx file.

### Upgrade Procedure

Follow these steps to upgrade the CPU and BME XBP ••00 rack firmware:

Step	Action
1	Install Unity Loader software provided with Unity Pro.
2	Connect the PC that is running Unity Loader to the CPU.
3	Launch Unity Loader.
4	Click <b>Firmware</b> tab.
5	In the <b>PC</b> list box, select the .ldx file that contains the firmware file.
6	When connected with Ethernet, check that the MAC address indicated in the <b>PLC</b> box corresponds to the MAC address marked on the CPU.
7	Check that transfer sign is green to allow transfer from PC to CPU.
8	Click <b>Transfer</b> .
9	Click <b>Close</b> .

# (Hardened) Equipment

## Introduction

Hardened equipment is the ruggedized version of standard equipment that can operate in extended temperature ranges and in dirty or corrosive environments. There are hardened versions of several of the CPUs, backplanes, and power supplies, as well as other components, in the M580 system.

## Extended Temperature Considerations

The standard temperature range for M580 equipment is 0...60 °C (32...140 °F). Hardened equipment can operate at extended temperature range: –25...70 °C (–13...158 °F).

When used in the standard temperature range, hardened equipment has the same performance characteristics as the standard equipment. However, at the higher and lower ends of the extended temperature range (lower than 0 °C (32 °F) or higher than 60 °C (140 °F)), the hardened power supplies can have reduced power ratings (*see page 81*) that affect power calculations.

If hardened equipment is operated above or below the extended temperature limits (lower than –25 °C (–13 °F) or higher than 70 °C (158 °F)), the equipment can operate abnormally.

### WARNING

#### UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Do not operate M580 equipment outside of its specified temperature range.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

## Operating in Harsh Environments

Hardened equipment has a conformal coating applied to its electronic boards. When associated with appropriate installation and maintenance, this treatment allows it to be more robust in harsh chemical environments.

Conformal coating increases the isolation capability of the circuit boards and their resistance to:

- condensation
- dusty atmospheres (conducting foreign particles)
- chemical corrosion, in sulphurous atmospheres (for example, in oil refineries or purification plants) or in atmospheres that contain halogens such as chlorine.

## Hardened M580 CPU, Power Supply, and Backplane Equipment

The following hardened equipment is available:

Component	Reference
CPUs	BME P58 1020 H
	BME P58 2020 H
	BME P58 2040 H
backplanes	BME XBP 0400 H
	BME XBP 0800 H
	BME XBP 1200 H
backplane extension	BMX XBE 1000 H
power supplies	BMX CPS 3020 H
	BMX CPS 3500 H

For a list of additional M580 hardened equipment, refer to the *Modicon M580 System Planning Guide*.





---

# Chapter 2

## M580 Racks

---

### Introduction

This chapter describes local racks and rack extender modules.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
2.1	BME XBP xxxx Rack Description	50
2.2	BME XBP xxxx Rack Characteristics	73

# Section 2.1

## BME XBP xxxx Rack Description

---

### Introduction

This section describes the main local racks and the extended local racks that can be used in M580 systems.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Local and Remote Racks	51
X80 Rack Characteristics	54
Extended Racks	57
X80 Rack Extender Module	60
Premium TSX RKY Extended Racks	63
Premium Extended Rack Characteristics	65
Addressing Premium Extended Racks	67
Rack Extender Cables and Terminators	69
Rack Firmware Upgrade	72

## Local and Remote Racks

### Introduction

A module is a system component that is installed in a rack and that communicates across a bus built into the backplane of that rack. The M580 PAC is a modular system that includes a CPU, power supplies, and I/O and communication modules. The PAC also has the ability to manage distributed equipment that resides off the racks, but this equipment is optional.

### Local Rack

A BME P58 CPU is a module that resides in the local rack. The local rack is located at the head of the M580 PAC network. Every PAC system is managed by 1 and only 1 local rack. Also present in the local rack (and in all racks) is a power supply module ([see page 78](#)).

Other modules, such as communication adapters and local X80 I/O modules, may also be present in the local rack. The presence of these other modules is optional. The presence of a CPU and a power supply is necessary in the local rack for the system to function.

This user guide focuses primarily on the local rack, where the CPU resides.

### Remote Racks

If you are using an M580 CPU with RIO scanner service, you may have up to 16 remote drops of X80 I/O modules ([see page 21](#)). Each remote drop contains a main remote rack. In that main remote rack reside a power supply module, a BM• CRA 312 00 X80 EIO adapter module, and the X80 I/O modules you have chosen for that drop.

For detailed information on the BM• CRA 312 00 adapters and the installation of a remote drop, refer to the *Modicon M580 Remote I/O Installation and Configuration Guide*.

### Choosing an Ethernet or an X Bus Rack

One key role of a rack is to provide a communication bus for the modules in the local rack or remote drop. The Modicon M580 PAC uses 2 types of backplanes, Ethernet and X Bus. The X Bus connection is present on all M580 racks. A subset of the Modicon M580 racks contains an additional Ethernet backplane.

Ethernet is used across the backplane for:

- eX80 I/O modules, which require an Ethernet bus on the rack in order to exchange data (for example, X80 HART modules)
- third-party (PME) modules that require Ethernet
- Ethernet communication modules interlink to the CPU

For any of these cases, use an Ethernet rack. In other cases, an X Bus rack is allowed. If you use an X Bus rack for any of the cases above, the Ethernet capabilities of the modules will not work and they will not perform as expected.

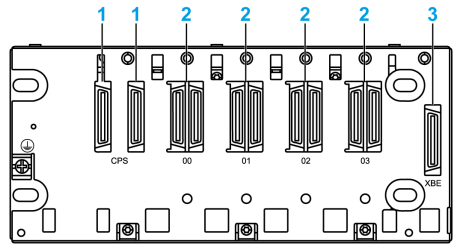
# Ethernet Racks

M580 Ethernet racks have all the features of the X Bus racks with the addition of an Ethernet communication bus across the backplane.

Ethernet (BME XBP) Rack Reference	Number of Module Slots
0400/0400 H	4
0800/0800 H	8
1200/1200 H	12 <sup>(1)</sup>
<b>1</b> 8 slots with X Bus and Ethernet connectors + 4 slots (slots number <b>02, 08,10, 11</b> ) with X Bus connector only	

All 3 Ethernet racks are available as standard or industrially hardened modules ([see page 46](#)). A hardened module has the letter **H** appended to the reference.

Here is a BME XBP 0400 (4-slot rack). The module slots in this rack contain 2 bus connectors per slot, one X Bus connector and one Ethernet bus connector:



- 1 power supply connectors
- 2 Ethernet and X Bus connectors
- 3 extender module connector

Any of these Ethernet racks can be used as a local or remote rack. Ethernet racks cannot be used as extended racks ([see page 57](#)). Only the X Bus can be extended within the local rack or in a remote drop.

## X Bus Racks

**NOTE:** The X Bus racks have the same commercial references as the racks that support the M340 PAC system. When these racks are used in the M580 system, you must use version PV: 02 or later. Earlier versions will work with M340 CPUs but not with M580 CPUs.

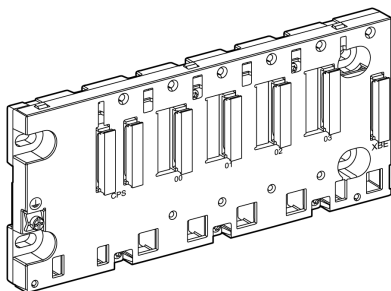
Each rack includes 1 slot with 2 connectors on the left side reserved for the power supply module. The slots that follow can be used for modules. The connector on the right can only be used to extend the rack. Racks are available with 4, 6, 8, and 12 module slots:

X Bus (BMX XBP) Rack Reference	Version	Number of Module Slots
0400/0400 H	PV:02 or later	4
0600/0600 H		6
0800/0800 H		8
1200/1200 H		12

The BMX XBP .... (PV:02 or later) racks are available as standard or industrially hardened modules ([see page 46](#)). A hardened module has the letter **H** appended to the reference.

Any of these X Bus racks can be used as a local or remote rack. They may be used as the main rack or as an extended rack.

Here is a BMX XBP 0400 (4-slot) rack. The 2 leftmost connectors are for the power supply, and the 4 module slots that follow have only one bus connector per slot. That connector is for X Bus. No Ethernet bus connectors are present.

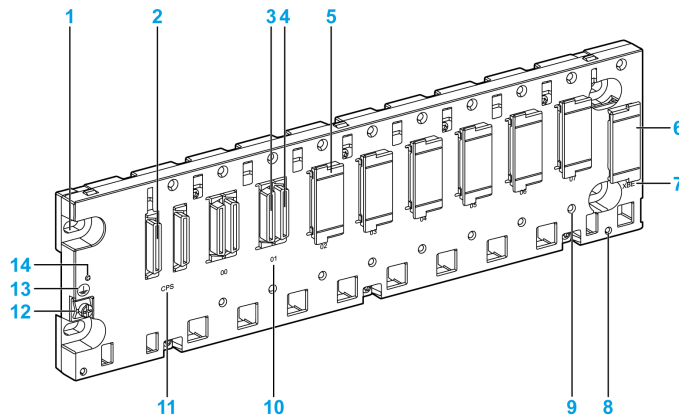


## X80 Rack Characteristics

### Front View

A BME XBP 0800 rack has eight X80 module slots, and each slot has both an Ethernet bus connector and an X Bus connector (items 3 and 4).

Example of BME XBP 0800 rack:



- 1 panel mounting hole
- 2 power supply module connectors
- 3 Ethernet connector
- 4 X Bus connector
- 5 protective cap (connectors protection against moist and dust)
- 6 40-pin female connector for a rack extender module
- 7 XBE marking for a rack extender module
- 8 shielding bar screw hole
- 9 keying hole for Ethernet module
- 10 marking for module location number
- 11 CPS marking for the power supply
- 12 protective ground screw
- 13 protective ground marking
- 14 rack status LED

### Power Supply Slot

The leftmost slot, where the power supply connects (item 2), is labeled **CPS**. The power supply slot contains 2 connectors. On all racks, regardless of whether they are in a local rack or remote drop, a power supply module is needed. This slot is reserved for the power supply, and no other module types can be installed here.

## Module Slots

The module slots, which are to the right of the **CPS** slot, are labeled numerically starting at **00**. For the 8-slot rack shown above, the module slots are labeled **00** through **07**.

In the main local rack, slot **00** (the first module slot after the power supply) is where the CPU is installed. In the main rack of a remote drop, slot **00** is where the (e)X80 EIO adapter module is installed. The remaining slots can be used for X80 I/O or communication modules. The number of module slots, and the presence or absence of an Ethernet connector at each module slot, depends on the rack reference you select ([see page 51](#)).

## Ethernet Connectors

An Ethernet communication bus is embedded in the backplane of the BME XBP xxxx racks.

## Ethernet Rack Status LED

The green rack status LED marked **OK** is present on Ethernet racks but not on X Bus racks. The LED indicates if the rack is working properly.

When this LED is ON, the following conditions internal to the rack have been fulfilled:

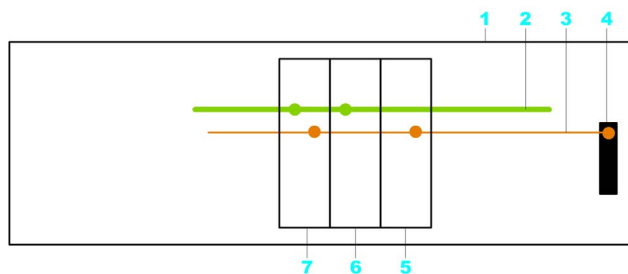
- The power rail voltages are in the rated range.
- The CPU watchdog is working properly.
- The Ethernet switch diagnostic is working properly.

When the LED is OFF, the backplane is not operational.

## X Bus Connectors

All M580 racks have an X Bus connector at every module slot. Many X80 I/O modules need only X Bus to support communication across the backplane.

The following illustration shows the bus connection to the extender connector on the right side of a BME XBP ••00 rack:

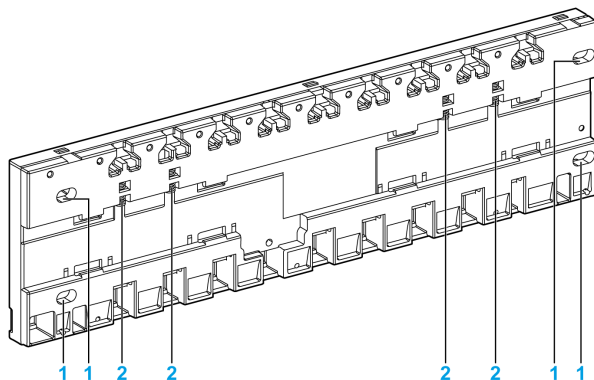


- 1 rack
- 2 Ethernet communication bus on the backplane
- 3 X Bus communication bus on the backplane
- 4 X Bus extender connector
- 5 Modicon X80 module
- 6 Ethernet only module
- 7 module with Ethernet and X Bus connectors

The X Bus extender connector is attached only to the X Bus communication bus.

### Rear View

The rear panel of an 8-slot rack, showing the mounting slots:



- 1 panel-mounting hole
- 2 spring for DIN-rail mounting

Most M580 racks may be mounted on:

- the wall of an enclosure
- a 35 mm (1.38 in) DIN rail
- Telequick mounting grids

The 12-slot (BME XBP 1200 (H) rack does not have springs like the ones shown previously (item 2). These racks cannot be mounted on a DIN rail.



## Extended Racks

### Overview

You may extend the number of racks in the local configuration in order to:

- increase the number of modules
- extend the area covered by the rack so that I/O modules can be installed closer to the different machines they are controlling
- include Premium I/O modules in the local rack

You can only use an X Bus rack as an extended rack. Install eX80 modules, which can only be installed on an Ethernet rack, in a main rack. eX80 modules do not operate in extended racks.

**NOTE:** Depending on the type of X80 EIO adapter module you select, you may also add an extended rack to a remote drop. You cannot install Premium I/O modules in a remote drop.

**NOTE:** For more information on extended racks in remote drops, refer to the *Modicon M580 Remote I/O Modules Installation and Configuration Guide*.

### Maximum Number of Extended Racks in the Local Rack

The number of extended racks allowed in the local rack depends on the CPU you select:

- The BME P58 1020, BME P58 2020, and BME P58 2040 CPUs support a main local rack and up to 3 extended racks. If you use 4-, 6-, or 8-slot Premium extended racks, you can install 2 physical racks at each assigned rack address, allowing up to 6 Premium extended racks.
- The BME P58 3020, BME P58 3040, BME P58 4020, and BME P58 4040 CPUs support a main local rack with up to 7 extended racks. If you use 4-, 6-, or 8-slot Premium extended racks, you can install 2 physical racks at each assigned rack address, allowing up to 14 Premium extended racks.

**NOTE:** When you use a 12-slot Premium extended rack, you can install only 1 rack at each rack address.

**NOTE:** When combining X80 and Premium extended racks, chain the X80 extended racks after the main local rack. Chain the Premium extended racks last.

### Assigning Rack Addresses

Assign a unique address to each extended rack.

- To assign a rack address to an X80 rack, use the microswitches on the BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module ([see page 60](#)), which is installed in each X80 extended rack.
- To assign a rack address to a Premium extended rack, use the microswitches on the left side of the Premium rack ([see page 67](#)). Premium extended racks are connected together directly by cable and do not use a rack extender module.

The main local rack, where the CPU resides, is rack address 00. You can assign rack addresses in the range 01 through 07 to the extended local rack(s).

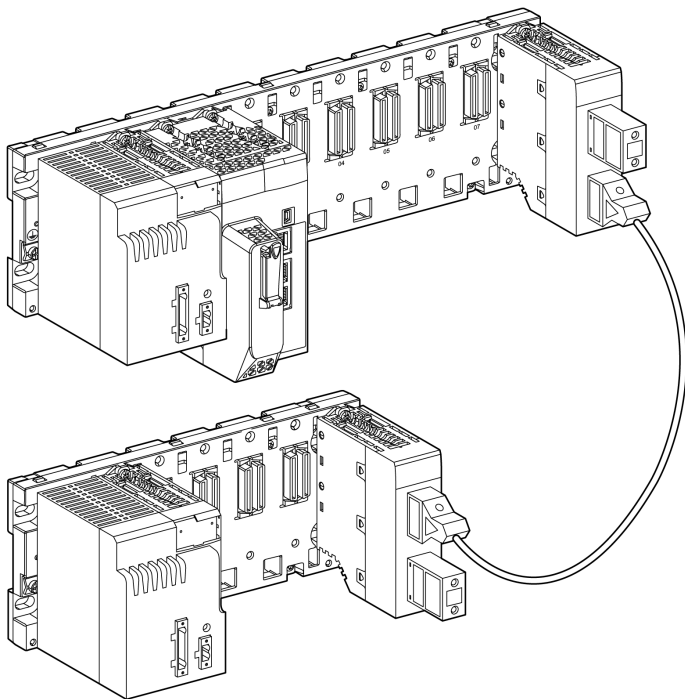
**NOTE:** With certain Premium extended racks, you can install 2 physical racks with 1 rack address. To distinguish between the 2 physical racks with the same rack address, set microswitch 4 on the 2 racks to different positions, one ON and the other OFF.

### Distance Between Extended Rack and the Main Rack

The maximum distance that an X80 extended rack can be from the main rack is 30 m. The maximum distance that a Premium extended rack can be from the main rack is 100 m.

### Example of Topology

The following is an example of a main local rack with 1 extended local rack:



**NOTE:**

- Each rack has a power supply and a BMX XBE 1000 extender module.
- An extender cable (in this case a BMX XBC cable) connects the 2 extender modules.
- The unused ports on the 2 extender modules are terminated, with a TSX line terminator on the main rack and TLY line terminator on the extended rack.

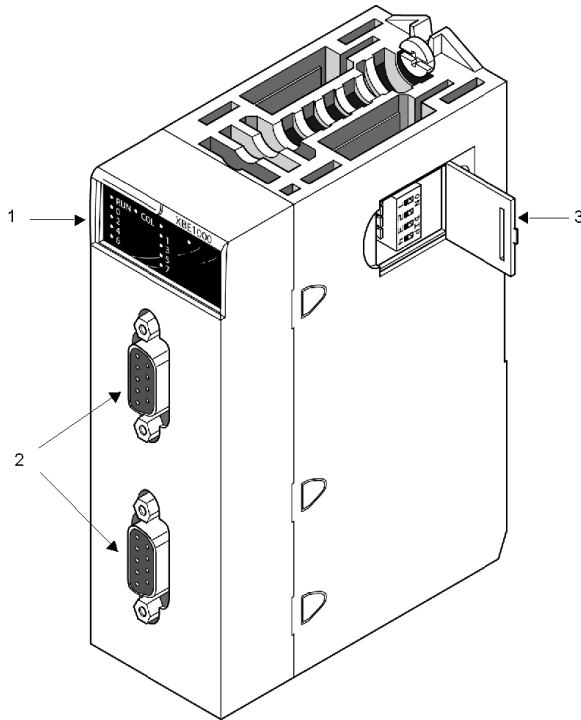
## Module Consumption

Consumption/Power Type	Description
consumption on 3.3 Vdc power supply	22 mA
dissipated power on the 3.3 Vdc rack power supply	73 mW
consumption on 24 Vdc rack power supply	160 mA
dissipated power on the 24 Vdc rack power supply	3.84 W

# X80 Rack Extender Module

## Physical Description

A BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module contains an LED diagnostic panel, a pair of connectors for the X Bus extender cables, and a set of switches for addressing the X80 extended racks.



- 1 rack extender module LEDs
- 2 female 9-pin SUB-D connectors for bus cables
- 3 rack address switches

## Rack Address Switches

Assign a unique address to each X80 extended rack. Use the 4 microswitches on the side of the rack extender module to set each rack address.

In a local rack, you can add as many as seven X80 extended racks ([see page 57](#)).

Switch	Rack Address							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON

Switch	Rack Address							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
2	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
3	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
4	Not used							

By default, the rack extender module is set to address **0** (all switches **OFF**). Address **0** is reserved for the main local rack, which contains the CPU. You can assign addresses **1** through **7** to the X80 extended racks in any order. Assign a unique rack address to each extended rack.

**NOTE:**

A *collision* can occur if you assign:

- the same rack address to more than one X80 extended rack
- address **0** to any rack other than the main local rack

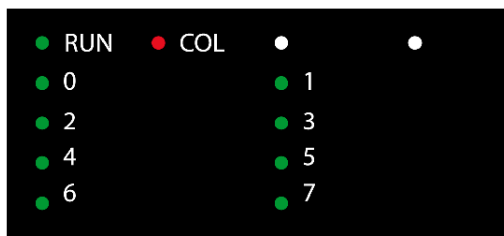
**NOTE:** When a collision happens, one of the racks with the duplicate rack address does not operate.

To recover from a collision:

Step	Action
1	Turn OFF the power supplies in the racks that have an address mismatch.
2	Set unique, correct rack addresses via the address switches on the rack extender module.
3	Reapply power to the racks.

## Rack Extender Module LEDs

The LEDs on the rack extender module provide information about the rack in which it resides:



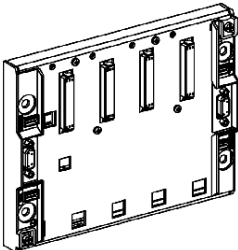
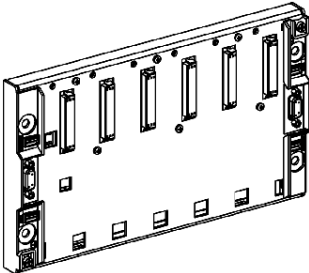
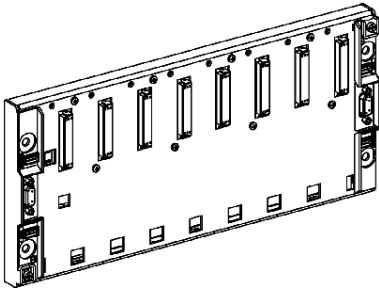
LED	Pattern	Indication
RUN (green)	ON	Module is functioning normally.
	OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The power supply is no longer present.</li> <li>• An error has been detected in the extender module.</li> </ul>

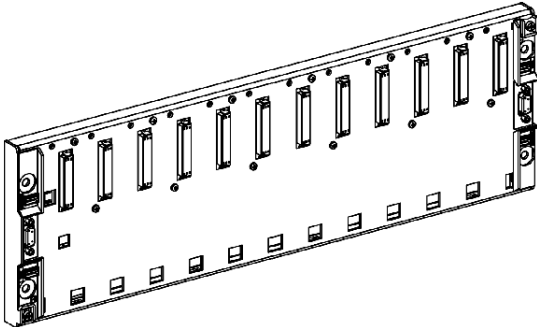
LED	Pattern	Indication
COL (red)	ON	Rack address collision detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Two or more racks have been assigned the same rack address.</li><li>• A rack that does not contain the CPU has been assigned address <b>0</b>.</li></ul>
	OFF	Each extended rack has a unique address.
<b>0 to 7</b> (green):	ON or OFF	Rack address. Confirm that each extender module has only one address LED set to ON.

Premium TSX RKY Extended Racks

Premium Extended Racks

If you install Premium equipment, use one of these 4 Premium extended racks:

Designation	Illustration
TSX RKY 4EX	4-slot rack 
TSX RKY 6EX	6-slot rack 
TSX RKY 8EX	8-slot rack 

Designation	Illustration
TSX RKY 12EX	12-slot rack 

**NOTE:** Use Premium TSX RKY ••EX(C) racks only. TSX RKY ••E(C) racks are not compatible.



## Premium Extended Rack Characteristics

### Overview

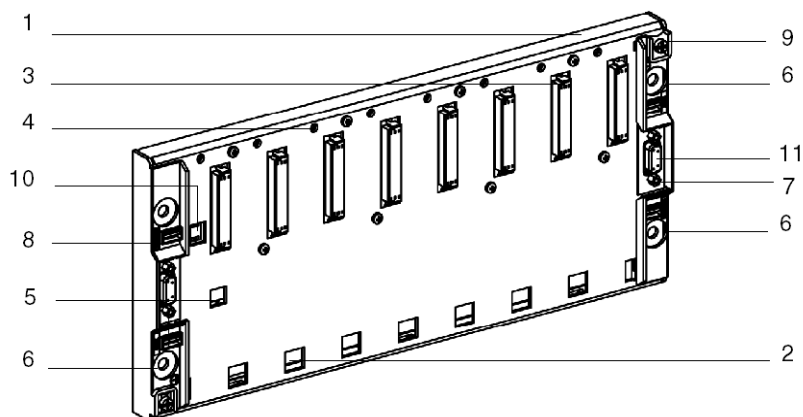
There are 2 types of Premium racks: main and extended racks. In the M580 system, use extended racks only for Premium installations.

Two elements distinguish an extended rack:

- the microswitches on the left side of the rack (item 10 in the following figure)
- the SUB-D connectors on the right side of the rack (item 11 in the following figure)

### Front View

The following is an example of a TSX RKY 8EX extended rack, which has 1 slot reserved for a power supply and 7 module slots.



- 1 metal frame to support the X Bus backplane, support the modules, and provide rack rigidity
- 2 anchor-point holes for module pins
- 3 female 48-pin 1/2 DIN connectors for installing a module on the rack
- 4 holes for the mounting screws
- 5 guide hole for mounting the power supply
- 6 M6 screw holes for mounting the rack
- 7 slot for the rack address label
- 8 slot for the network address label
- 9 ground terminals for the rack
- 10 microswitch for setting the rack address
- 11 female 9-pin SUB-D connectors for extending X Bus to another rack

## Slot Assignments

By default, the module connectors for each slot have protective covers. Remove the covers before installing the modules.

The leftmost slot is reserved for the power supply. The slot is marked **PS**. Power supply modules have a projecting part on the back so that they cannot be mounted in any other position. The remaining slots are designated for all other Premium modules, and they are labeled from left to right starting with **00**. In the preceding 8-slot example, the remaining slots are labeled **00** through **06**.

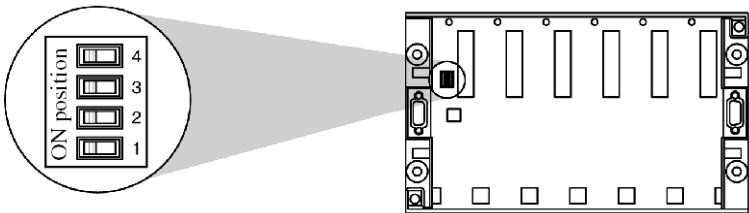
## Addressing Premium Extended Racks

### Introduction

Depending on the type of M580 CPU you use, you may have a total of either 4 or 8 racks in an extended local rack.

### Rack Address Microswitches

Assign a unique address to each extended rack. Set the address for a Premium rack with the 4 microswitches on the left side of the rack.



Use microswitches **1** to **3** to assign the rack address. Use microswitch **4** to distinguish 2 racks with the same address.

Rack addresses	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
4								
Position of the								
3								
micro-switches								
2								
1								
	ON OFF	ON OFF	ON OFF	ON OFF	ON OFF	ON OFF	ON OFF	ON OFF

**NOTE:** By default, microswitches 1, 2 and 3 are in the ON position, indicating rack address **00**. Address **00** is reserved for the main local rack, which is an X80 rack. Change the address of a Premium extended rack from the default setting before inserting modules.

**NOTE:** Set the rack address switches before mounting the power supply module.

### CAUTION

#### RACK ADDRESS CONFLICT

Assign a unique address to each rack in the range **00** through **07**.

Reset power after setting the rack addresses.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.**

## Assigning Addresses to Different Racks

Address #	Description
0	Reserved for the main local rack, which is an X80 rack.
1 to 7	Addresses can be assigned to the extended racks in any order.

**NOTE:** The rack address coding is done before applying the power supply.

- If 2 or more racks are at address 0, the rack supporting the CPU does not indicate a duplicate address.
- After you reassign unique addresses to remove duplicate addresses, cycle power the affected racks.

## Rack Extender Cables and Terminators

### BMX XBC xxxK and TSX CBY xxxK Rack Extender Cables

Extender cables are available in various lengths. Different types of cable are used to extend X80 I/O racks and Premium I/O racks.

**NOTE:** You can use Premium extended racks in a local rack only, not in a remote drop.

Cable Type		Length
Modicon X80	BMX XBC 008K	0.8 m (2.62 ft)
	BMX XBC 015K	1.5 m (4.92 ft)
	BMX XBC 030K	3 m (9.84 ft)
	BMX XBC 050K	5 m (16.4 ft)
	BMX XBC 120K	12 m (39.37 ft)
Premium	TSX CBY 010K	1 m (3.28 ft)
	TSX CBY 030K	3 m (9.84 ft)
	TSX CBY 050K	5 m (16.4 ft)
	TSX CBY 120K	12 m (39.37 ft)
	TSX CBY 180K	18 m (59.05 ft)
	TSX CBY 280K	28 m (91.86 ft)
	TSX CBY 380K	38 m (124.67 ft)
	TSX CBY 500K	50 m (164.04 ft)
	TSX CBY 720K	72 m (236.22 ft)
	TSX CBY 1000K	100 m (328.08 ft)
<b>NOTE:</b> If you install TSX CBY ***K cables, use PV 03 or later.		



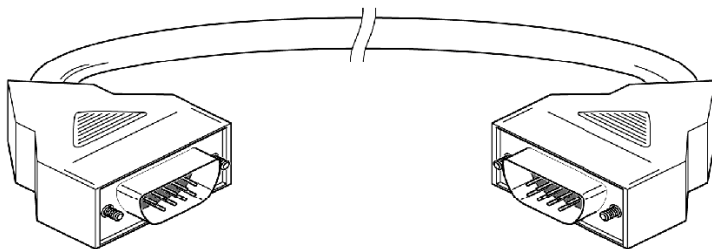
#### HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK

Remove power from the entire station (the local rack or remote drop) before installing or removing a BMX XBC \*\*\*K or a TSX CBY \*\*\*K cable.

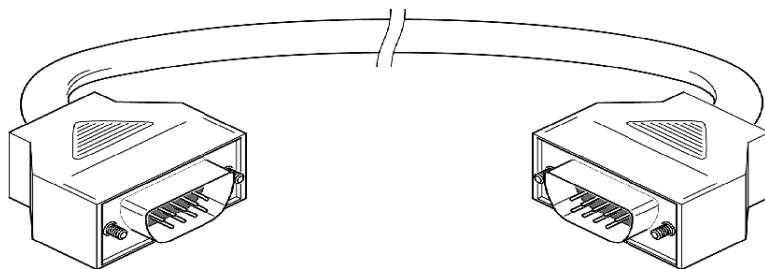
**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**

Each cable has a male 9-pin SUB D connector that plugs onto the 9-pin SUB D female connector of the rack extender modules.

The following is a BMX XBC \*\*\*K cable for an X80 I/O extended rack. The cable can be distinguished by its angled 45° connector.



The following is a TSX CBY \*\*\*K cable for a Premium extended rack:



### TSX TLY EX Line Terminators

Plug a line terminator at each end of the X Bus extended rack ([see page 115](#)).

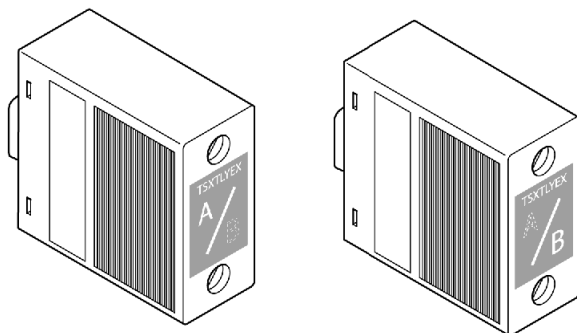
## WARNING

### UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Remove power from the entire station (the local rack or remote drop) before installing or removing a line terminator.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

The following figure shows line terminators containing the adaptation components with a 9-pin SUB-D connector. They are plugged onto the 9-pin SUB D connector of the extender module at each end of the X Bus extended rack.



TSX TLY EX line terminators are provided in pairs marked **A** and **B**. Use terminator **A** at one end and terminator **B** at the other end of an X Bus extended rack.

## Rack Firmware Upgrade

### Introduction

You can upgrade the BME XBP ••00 rack firmware by downloading a new firmware version with Unity Loader through the CPU or a BME CRA 312 •0 (e)X80 adapter module.

Download the firmware by connecting to either of the following:

- the CPU mini-B USB connector ([see page 35](#))
- the CPU **Service** port ([see page 39](#))
- the Ethernet network

Refer to the CPU firmware upgrade ([see page 45](#)) procedure for a description of the download procedure.

### Firmware

The firmware file is included in an `*.ldx` file.

### Troubleshooting

If the rack power supply is turned off during the upgrade procedure, the backplane firmware remains on the version embedded before the upgrade procedure.



---

# Section 2.2

## BME XBP xxxx Rack Characteristics

---

### Introduction

This section presents the BME XBP ••00 rack performances, electrical characteristics, and dimensions.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Electrical Characteristics	74
Rack Dimensions	75

# Electrical Characteristics

## Introduction

The rack delivers 24 Vdc and 3.3 Vdc to supply the backplane and connected modules.

## Backplane Power Consumption

Power consumption of the rack backplanes:

Rack Type	Backplane Average Current Consumption	
	3.3 Vdc Supply Power	24 Vdc Supply Power
BME XBP 0400 (H)	49 mA (162 mW)	118 mA (2.8 W)
BME XBP 0800 (H)	64 mA (211 mW)	164 mA (3.9 W)
BME XBP 1200 (H)	86 mA (283 mW)	164 mA (3.9 W)

## Mean Time Between Failures

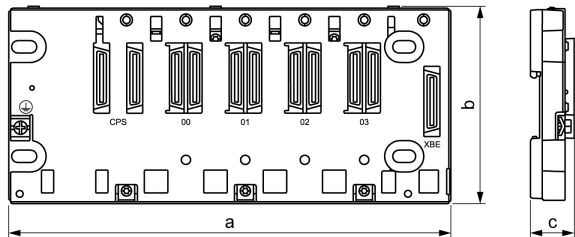
The rack MTBF is a component of the global system MTBF:

Rack Type	MTBF (Hours at 30 ° C Continuous)
BME XBP 0400 (H)	2000000
BME XBP 0800 (H)	1700000
BME XBP 1200 (H)	1500000

## Rack Dimensions

### Rack Dimensions

The following illustration displays the overall dimensions of the BME XBP \*\*00 racks:

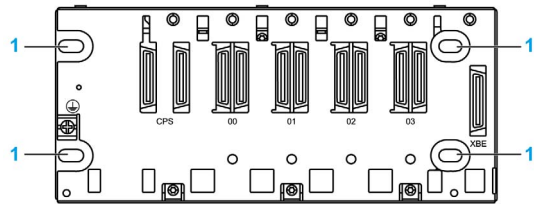


Dimensions of each BME XBP \*\*00 rack:

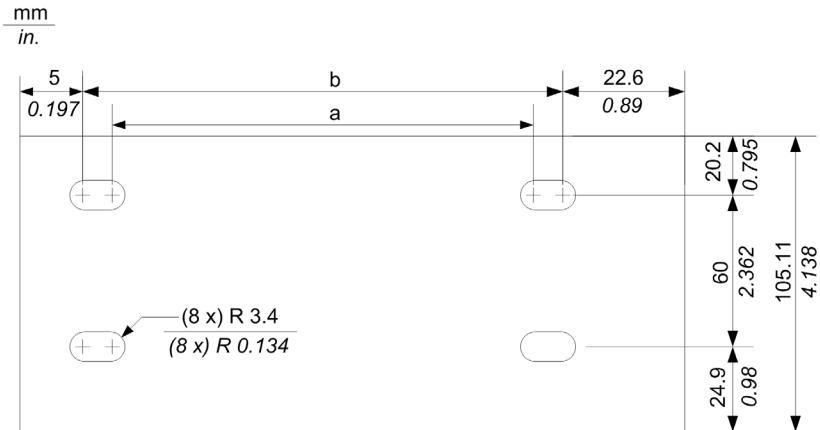
Rack Type	a		b	c
	Empty Rack	Rack With Extender Module Mounted		
BME XBP 0400 (H)	242.4 mm (9.543 in.)	243.58 mm (9.59 in.)	105.11 mm (4.138 in.)	19 mm (0.748 in.)
BME XBP 0800 (H)	372.8 mm (14.677 in.)	373.98 mm (14.724 in.)	<b>NOTE:</b> Overall height is 134.6 mm (5.299 in.) with a CPU mounted.	
BME XBP 1200 (H)	503.2 mm (19.811 in.)	504.38 mm (19.857 in.)		

### Panel Fastening Holes Dimension and Location

Fastening holes are located at the 4 corners of a BME XBP \*\*00 rack.



1 Fastening holes



**NOTE:** You can use M4, M5, M6, or UNC #6 screws in the fastening holes.

Rack Type	a	b
BME XBP 0400 (H)	202.1 mm (7.957 in.)	214.8 mm (8.457 in.)
BME XBP 0800 (H)	332.5 mm (13.09 in.)	345.2 mm (13.59 in.)
BME XBP 1200 (H)	462.9 mm (18.224 in.)	475.6 mm (18.724 in.)

---

# Chapter 3

## M580-Compatible Power Supply Modules

---

### Introduction

This chapter describes power supplies used to power the BME XBP 00 racks.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Power Supply Modules	78
LED Display	79
<b>Reset</b> Button	80
Usable Power	81
Module Power Consumption	83

## Power Supply Modules

### Introduction

Main and extended local racks, as well as remote racks that contain X80 I/O modules, require one of the following power supply modules:

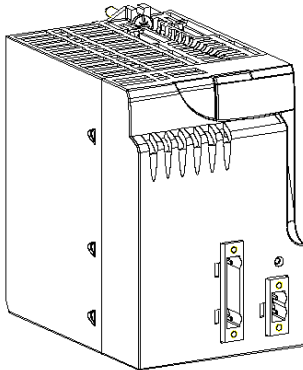
- BMX CPS 2000
- BMX CPS 2010
- BMX CPS 3020 and BMX CPS 3020 H
- BMX CPS 3500 and BMX CPS 3500 H
- BMX CPS 3540T

**NOTE:** The BMX CPS 3020 H, BMX CPS 3500 H, and BMX CPS 3540T are industrially hardened power supplies that can work at extended temperature ranges and in harsh environments ([see page 46](#)).

The power supply you choose for each rack depends on the current requirements (alternating or direct) and the power consumption of the modules in the rack.

### Illustration

The following illustration shows a BMX CPS .... power supply module:



## LED Display

### Introduction

Power supply modules have a display panel with a green **OK** LED.

The BMX CPS 2000 and BMX CPS 3500 power supplies and the BMX CPS 3540T direct current power supply have an additional green **24 V** LED.

### Indications

The power supply LEDs indicate the following diagnostic information:

LED	Status Indication
<b>OK</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● ON in normal operating mode</li><li>● OFF when the rack power supply output voltage is below the threshold or when the RESET button is pressed</li></ul>
<b>24 V</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● ON in normal operating mode</li><li>● OFF if the 24 Vdc sensor voltage supplied by the power supply is no longer present</li></ul>

## Reset Button

### Introduction

The power supply module has a **Reset** button on its front panel which, when pressed, triggers an initialization sequence of the modules on the rack that it supplies.

### Pressing the Reset Button

When the **Reset** button is pressed, the following events occur:

- Power is removed from the bus, forcing all modules to a cold start.
- The ALARM relay is forced to open state.
- The power supply **OK** LED is switched off.

Pressing/releasing the **Reset** button triggers a cold start. The connectors around the **Reset** button are energized.



#### HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK

- Do not touch the **Reset** button directly.
- Use an insulated tool to press the **Reset** button.

**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**



## Usable Power

### Introduction

When the power necessary for a rack has been calculated, the information in this section is used to select the appropriate power supply module to be installed on the rack.

### Usable Power

The following table shows the power supply module usable power in the temperature range 0...60 °C (32...140 °F).

Power	BMX CPS 2000	BMX CPS 2010	BMX CPS 3020	BMX CPS 3500	BMX CPS 3540 T
total usable power (all outputs included)	20 W	17 W	32 W	36 W	36 W
usable power at the 3V3_BAC output	8.3 W (2.5 A)	8.3 W (2.5 A)	15 W (4.5 A)	15 W (4.5 A)	15 W (4.5 A)
usable power at the 24V_BAC output	16.5 W (0.7 A)	16.5 W (0.7 A)	31.2 W (1.3 A)	31.2 W (1.3 A)	31.2 W (1.3 A)
usable power at the 3V3_BAC and 24V_BAC outputs	16.5 W	16.5 W	31.2 W	31.2 W	31.2 W
usable power at the 24V_SENSORS output	10.8 W (0.45 A)	-	-	21.6 W (0.9 A)	21.6 W (0.9 A)

The power supply modules operate in an extended temperature range of -25...0 °C (-13...32 °F) and 60...70 °C (140...158 °F). The following table shows how power is derated when operation is in the extended ranges.

Power	BMX CPS 3020 H	BMX CPS 3500 H	BMX CPS 3540 T
total usable power (all outputs included)	24 W	27 W	27 W
usable power at the 3V3_BAC output	11.25 W (3.375 A)	11.25 W (3.375 A)	11.25 W (3.375 A)
usable power at the 24V_BAC output	23.4 W (0.975 A)	23.4 W (0.975 A)	23.4 W (0.975 A)
usable power at the 3V3_BAC and 24V_BAC outputs	23.4 W	23.4 W	23.4 W
usable power at the 24V_SENSORS output	-	16.2 W (0.5 A)	16.2 W (0.5 A)

**NOTE:** The 24V\_SENSORS output is the 24 Vdc sensor power supply output and is only available on the **BMX CPS 2000/3500/3500 H/3540 T** modules.

Excessive load can cause the power supply to trip off

## **WARNING**

### **UNEXPECTED EQUIPMENT OPERATION - POWER DEMAND**

Do not exceed the **BMX CPS 3500 H** and **BMX CPS 3540 T** 24V\_SENSORS output power rating.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

## **Power Limits**

Excessive load can cause the power supply to trip off.

## **WARNING**

### **UNEXPECTED EQUIPMENT OPERATION - POWER DEMAND**

Do not exceed the total useful power rating of the module. Use the rules below to determine the maximum power supplied to outputs.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

When establishing the power used by the **BMX CPS 2000/3500/3500 H/3540 T** modules, follow these rules:

- Do not let the sum of the power absorbed on the 3V3\_BAC, 24V\_BAC, and 24V\_SENSORS outputs exceed the maximum usable power of the module.
- Do not let the sum of the power absorbed on the 3V3\_BAC and 24V\_BAC outputs exceed the sum of their usable power.

When establishing the power used by the **BMX CPS 2010/3020/3020 H** modules:

- Do not let the sum of the power absorbed on the 3V3\_BAC and 24V\_BAC outputs exceed the maximum usable power of the module.

## Module Power Consumption

### Introduction

The power necessary for a rack depends on the type of modules installed. Calculate the global power consumption to define the power supply module to be installed on the rack.

**NOTE:** Unity Pro software can display the power consumption budget for a given configuration. To reach this functionality, refer to the *Consumption Management* section of *Unity Pro, Operating Modes* user guide.

The following tables give the average power consumption per module. The average value is calculated regarding the maximum and typical consumptions.

### CPU Power Calculation Tables

The following tables explain how to define the global power consumption on a rack. Refer to the module current consumption table ([see page 84](#)), and rack and extender module consumption table ([see page 86](#)) to define the total current consumed for each voltage source of the power supply.

Method to establish a power calculation for modules without **24V\_Sensor** power available:

Power	Calculation	Result
power necessary on the 3.3 V rack output (P 3.3 V rack)	(current absorbed on the 3V3_BAC output by all modules (mA)) $\times 10^{-3} \times 3.3$	=.....W
power necessary on the 24 V rack output (P 24 V rack)	(current absorbed on the 24V_BAC output by all modules (mA)) $\times 10^{-3} \times 24$	=.....W
total power necessary	(P 3.3 V rack) + (P 24 V rack)	=.....W

Method to establish a power calculation for modules with **24V\_Sensor** power available:

Power	Calculation	Result
power necessary on the 3.3 V rack output (P 3.3 V rack)	(current absorbed on the 3V3_BAC output by all modules (mA)) $\times 10^{-3} \times 3.3$	=.....W
power necessary on the 24 V rack output (P 24 V rack)	(current absorbed on the 24V_BAC output by all modules (mA)) $\times 10^{-3} \times 24$	=.....W
power necessary on the 24 V sensor output (P 24 V sensors)	(current absorbed on the 24V_Sensors output by all modules (mA)) $\times 10^{-3} \times 24$	=.....W
total power necessary	(P 3.3 V rack) + (P 24 V rack) + (P 24 V sensors)	=.....W

## Module Current Consumption

Average current consumption for each module:

Module Type	Module		Average Current Consumption (mA)		
	Reference	Description	3.3V_BAC Output	24VR_BAC Output	24V_SENSORS Output
CPU	BME P58 10•0		–	270	–
	BME P58 20•0		–	270	–
	BME P58 30•0		–	295	–
	BME P58 40•0		–	295	–
analog	BMX AMI 0410	4 isolated high-speed analog inputs	150	45	–
	BMX AMI 0800	8 non-isolated high-speed analog inputs	150	41	–
	BMX AMI 0810	8 isolated high-speed analog inputs	150	54	–
	BMX AMM 0600	4 channel analog inputs	240	–	120
	BMX AMO 0210	2 isolated analog outputs	150	110	–
	BMX AMO 0410	4 isolated high-speed analog outputs	150	140	–
	BMX AMO 0802	8 non-isolated high-speed analog outputs	150	135	–
	BMX ART 0414	4 isolated analog inputs	150	40	–
	BMX ART 0814	8 isolated analog inputs	220	50	–
communication	BMX NOE 0100	Ethernet 1 port 10/100 RJ45	–	90	–
	BMX NOE 0110	Ethernet 1 port 10/100 RJ45	–	90	–
counting	BMX EHC 0200	2 channel high speed counter	200	40	80
	BMX EHC 0800	8 channel high speed counter	200	–	80

Module Type	Module		Average Current Consumption (mA)		
	Reference	Description	3.3V_BAC Output	24VR_BAC Output	24V_SENSORS Output
discrete inputs	BMX DAI 0805	8 discrete 200...240 Vac inputs	103	13	—
	BMX DAI 1602	16 discrete 24Vac/24Vdc inputs	90	—	60
	BMX DAI 1603	16 discrete 48 Vac inputs	90	—	60
	BMX DAI 1604	16 discrete 100...120 Vac inputs	90	—	—
	BMX DDI 1602	16 discrete 24 Vdc inputs	90	—	60
	BMX DDI 1603	16 discrete 48 Vdc inputs	75	—	135
	BMX DDI 1604T	16 discrete 125 Vdc inputs	75	—	135
	BMX DDI 3202 K	32 discrete 24 Vdc inputs	140	—	110
	BMX DDI 6402 K	64 discrete 24 Vdc inputs	200	—	110
discrete outputs	BMX DAO 1605	16 discrete outputs	100	95	—
	BMX DDO 1602	16 discrete 0.5 A outputs	100	—	—
	BMX DDO 1612	16 discrete outputs	100	—	—
	BMX DDO 3202 K	32 discrete 0.1 A outputs	150	—	—
	BMX DDO 6402 K	64 discrete 0.1 A outputs	240	—	—
	BMX DRA 0804T	8 discrete isolated outputs	100	110	—
	BMX DRA 0805	8 discrete isolated outputs	100	55	—
	BMX DRA 1605	16 discrete outputs	100	95	—

Module Type	Module		Average Current Consumption (mA)		
	Reference	Description	3.3V_BAC Output	24VR_BAC Output	24V_SENSORS Output
discrete inputs/outputs	BMX DDM 16022	8 discrete 24 Vdc inputs and 8 discrete outputs	100	–	30
	BMX DDM 16025	8 discrete 24 Vdc inputs and 8 discrete outputs	100	50	30
	BMX DDM 3202 K	16 discrete 24 Vdc inputs and 16 discrete outputs	150	–	55
motion	BMX MSP 0200	2 independent Pulse Train Output channels	200	150	–

### Rack and Extender Module Consumption

Average current consumption for each rack

Family	Rack Reference	Average Current Consumption (mA)	
		3.3V_BAC Output	24V_BAC Output
BMX XBP .... (PV:02 or later) rack	BMX XBP 0400 (H)	340	–
	BMX XBP 0600 (H)	510	–
	BMX XBP 0800 (H)	670	–
	BMX XBP 1200	50	–
	BMX XBP 1200 (H)	250	–
BME XBP ..00 rack	BME XBP 0400 (H)	49	118
	BME XBP 0800 (H)	64	164
	BME XBP 1200 (H)	86	164
rack extender module	BMX XBE 1000	22	160

---

# Chapter 4

## Standards, Certifications, and Conformity Tests

---

### Introduction

This chapter describes the operational standards for modules in an M580 PAC system. Agency certifications, environmental conditions, and mechanical characteristics of the modules are detailed.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Standards and Certifications	88
Service Conditions and Recommendations Relating to Environment	90
Conformity Tests	91

## Standards and Certifications

### Introduction

M580 PACs have been designed to comply with the relevant standards and rules for electrical equipment in an industrial automation environment.

**NOTE:** The M580 PAC standard and certifications are consistent with Modicon X80 and M340 module values.

### Industrial Standards

Requirements specific to the PAC functional characteristics, immunity, robustness, and safety:

- IEC/EN 61131-2 completed by IEC 61010-2-201
- CSA 22.2 No.142 completed by CSA-E 61131-2
- UL 508

### Merchant Navy Certification

The products are designed to comply with major merchant navy agencies requirements (IACS).

More details on merchant navy certifications are available on Schneider Electric website:  
[www.schneider-electric.com](http://www.schneider-electric.com).

### European Directives for EC Marking

- low voltage: 2006/95/EC
- electromagnetic compatibility: 2004/108/EC

### Installation in Classified Ex Area

- For USA and Canada: Hazardous locations class I, division 2, groups A, B, C, and D according to CSA 22.2 No.213, or ISA12.12.01, or FM3611
- For other countries: EC ATEX (directive 94/9/EC), or IECEx in defined atmosphere zone 2 (gas) and/or zone 22 (dust) according to IEC/EN 60079-0, IEC/EN 60079-15, and IEC/EN 60079-31

More details on certifications and Ex installation guides are available on Schneider Electric website: [www.schneider-electric.com](http://www.schneider-electric.com).

### Specific Countries

- For Australia and New Zealand: ACMA requirements for RCM marking (formerly C-Tick)
- For Russia and eastern countries: GOST and EAC

### Environmental Friendly Design

- Hazardous substances  
This product is compliant with:
  - WEEE, Directive 2002/96/EC
  - RoHS, Directive 2011/65/EU



- RoHS China, Standard SJ/T 11363-2006
- REACH regulation EC 1907/2006

**NOTE:** Documentation about sustainable development is available on Schneider Electric website (Product Environmental Profile and End of Life Instructions, RoHS and REACH certificates).

- End of life (WEEE)  
This product contains electronic boards. It must be disposed of in specific treatment channels.

## Service Conditions and Recommendations Relating to Environment

### Operating Temperature/Hygrometry/Altitude

Condition		Standard M580 Components	Hardened M580 Components
temperature	operation	0...+60 °C (+32...+140 °F)	−25...+70 °C (−13...+158 °F)
	storage	−40...+85 °C (−40...+185 °F)	−40...+85 °C (−40...+185 °F)
relative humidity (without condensation)	cyclical humidity	5...95% up to +55 °C (+131 °F)	5...95% up to +55 °C (+131 °F)
	continuous humidity	5...93% up to +55 °C (+131 °F)	5...93% up to +60 °C (+140 °F)
altitude	operation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0...2000 m (0...6562 ft): full specification for temperature and isolation</li> <li>2000...4000 m (6562...13123 ft): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>temperature derating: +1 °C/400 m (+1.8 °F/1312 ft)</li> <li>isolation loss: 150 Vdc/1000 m (150 Vdc/3280 ft)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

### Supply Voltage

Operating conditions relative to the supply voltage:

Power Supply		BMX CPS References				
		2010	3020 (H)	3500 (H)	2000	3540 T
Voltage	Rated	24 Vdc	24...48 Vdc	100...240 Vac	100...240 Vac	125 Vdc
	Limit	18...31.2 Vdc	18...62.4 Vdc	85...264 Vac	85...264 Vac	100...150 Vdc
Frequency	Rated	—	—	50...60 Hz	50...60 Hz	—
	Limit	—	—	47...63 Hz	47...63 Hz	—
Micro-power outages	Duration	≤10 ms <sup>(1.)</sup>	≤10 ms <sup>(1.)</sup>	≤1/2 period	≤1/2 period	≤50 ms at 125 Vdc
	Repetition	≥ 1 s	≥ 1 s	≥ 1 s	≥ 1 s	≥ 1 s
Harmonic rate		—	—	10 %	10 %	—
Residual ripple included (0 to peak)		5 %	5 %	—	—	5 %
1. Limited to 1 ms at maximum load with minimum supply (18 Vdc).						

## Conformity Tests

### Installation Wiring and Maintenance

Install, wire, and maintain devices in compliance with the instructions provided in the Grounding and Electromagnetic Compatibility of PLC Systems, Basic Principles and Measures, User Manual ([see page 12](#)) and Control Panel Technical Guide, How to protect a machine from malfunctions due to electromagnetic disturbance ([see page 12](#)).

### Equipment and Personnel Safety (EC)

Name of Test	Standards	Level
dielectric strength and insulation resistance	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 61010-2-201 UL CSA	dielectric: $2 U_n + 1000 \text{ V}$ ; $t = 1 \text{ min}$ insulation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><math>U_n \leq 50 \text{ V}</math>: <math>10 \text{ M}\Omega</math></li> <li><math>50 \text{ V} \leq U_n \leq 250 \text{ V}</math>: <math>100 \text{ M}\Omega</math></li> </ul>
continuity of earth	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 61010-2-201 UL CSA	$30 \text{ A}$ , $R \leq 0.1 \Omega$ , $t = 2 \text{ min}$
leakage current	UL CSA	$\leq 3.5 \text{ mA}$ after disconnecting
protection offered by enclosure	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 61010-2-201	IP 20 and protection against standardized pins
impact withstand	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 61010-2-201 UL CSA	sphere of $500 \text{ g}$ , fall from $1.3 \text{ m}$ (energy $6.8 \text{ J}$ minimum)
stored energy injury risk	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 61010-2-201	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>non-permanent connection: <math>37\% U_n</math> after <math>1 \text{ s}</math></li> <li>permanent connection: <math>37\% U_n</math> after <math>10 \text{ s}</math></li> </ul>
overload	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 61010-2-201 UL CSA	$50$ cycles, $U_n$ , $1.5 I_n$ $t = 1 \text{ s ON} + 9 \text{ s OFF}$
endurance	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 61010-2-201 UL CSA	$I_n$ , $U_n$ $12$ cycles: $t = 100 \text{ ms ON} + 100 \text{ ms OFF}$ $988$ cycles: $t = 1 \text{ s ON} + 1 \text{ s OFF}$ $5000$ cycles: $t = 1 \text{ s ON} + 9 \text{ s OFF}$
temperature rise	IEC/EN 61131-2 UL CSA IECEX	ambient temperature: $+60^\circ \text{C}$ (for ruggedized range ( <a href="#">see page 90</a> ): $+70^\circ \text{C}$ )
<b><math>U_n</math></b> nominal voltage <b><math>I_n</math></b> nominal current		

**NOTE:** (EC): tests required by European directives EC and based on IEC/EN 61131-2 standards.

### Immunity to L.F. Interference (EC)

Name of Test	Standards	Level
voltage and frequency variations	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/EN 61000-6-2 IEC 61000-4-11	0.85 <b>Un</b> , 1.10 <b>Un</b> 0.94 <b>Fn</b> , 1.04 <b>Fn</b> 4 steps t = 30 min
	IACS E10 IEC 61000-4-11	0.80 <b>Un</b> , 1.20 <b>Un</b> 0.90 <b>Fn</b> , 1.10 <b>Fn</b> t = 1.5 s/5 s
direct voltage variations	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 61000-4-29 IACS E10 (PAC not connected to charging battery)	0.85 <b>Un</b> + ripple: 5% peak 1.2 <b>Un</b> + ripple: 5% peak 2 steps t = 30 min
third harmonic	IEC/EN 61131-2	H3 (10% <b>Un</b> ) 0° / 180° 2 steps t = 5 min
immunity to conducted low frequency (only IACS)	IACS E10	for ac: H2...H15 (10% <b>Un</b> ), H15...H100 (10...1% <b>Un</b> ), H100...H200 (1% <b>Un</b> ) for dc: H2...H200 (10% <b>Un</b> )
voltage interruptions	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/EN 61000-6-2 IEC 61000-4-11 IEC 61000-4-29 IACS E10	power supply immunity: 1 ms for dc <b>PS1</b> / 10 ms for ac or dc <b>PS2</b> Check operating mode for longer interruptions. for IACS: 30 s for ac or dc
	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/EN 61000-6-2 IEC 61000-4-11	for ac <b>PS2</b> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>20% <b>Un</b>, t0: 1/2 period</li> <li>40% <b>Un</b>, cycle 10/12</li> <li>70% <b>Un</b>, cycle 25/30</li> <li>0% <b>Un</b>, cycle 250/300</li> </ul>
voltage shut-down and start-up	IEC/EN 61131-2	<b>Un</b> ...0... <b>Un</b> ; t = <b>Un</b> / 60 s <b>Umin</b> ...0... <b>Umin</b> ; t = <b>Umin</b> / 5 s <b>Umin</b> ...0.9 <b>Udl</b> ... <b>Umin</b> ; t = <b>Umin</b> / 60 s
<b>Umin</b> minimum voltage <b>Udl</b> detection level when powered <b>Un</b> nominal voltage <b>Fn</b> nominal frequency <b>PS1</b> applies to PAC supplied by battery <b>PS2</b> applies to PAC energized from ac or dc supplies		

Name of Test	Standards	Level
magnetic field	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/TS 61000-6-5 IEC 61000-4-8 (for MV power stations: IEC 61850-3)	power frequency: 50/60 Hz 100 A/m continuous 1000 A/m, t = 3 s 3 axes
	IEC 61000-4-10 (for MV power stations: IEC 61850-3)	oscillatory: 100 kHz–1 MHz, 100 A/m t=9 s 3 axes
conducted common mode disturbances range 0...150 kHz	IEC 61000-4-16 (for MV power stations: IEC 61850-3)	for remote systems: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 50/60 Hz and dc, 300 V, t = 1 s</li> <li>● 50/60 Hz and dc, 30 V, t = 1 min</li> <li>● 5 Hz...150 kHz, sweep 3...30 V</li> </ul>
<b>U<sub>min</sub></b> minimum voltage <b>U<sub>dl</sub></b> detection level when powered <b>U<sub>n</sub></b> nominal voltage <b>F<sub>n</sub></b> nominal frequency <b>PS1</b> applies to PAC supplied by battery <b>PS2</b> applies to PAC energized from ac or dc supplies		

**NOTE:** (EC): tests required by European directives EC and based on IEC/EN 61131-2 standards.

### Immunity to H.F. Interference (EC)

Name of Test	Standards	Level
electrostatic discharges	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/EN 61000-6-2 IEC 61000-4-2 IACS E10	6 kV contact 8 kV air 6 kV indirect contact
radiated radio frequency electromagnetic field	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/EN 61000-6-2 IEC 61000-4-3 IACS E10	15 V/m, 80 MHz...3 GHz sinus amplitude modulated 80%, 1 kHz + internal clock frequencies
electrical fast transient burst	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/EN 61000-6-2 IEC 61000-4-4 IACS E10	for ac and dc main supplies: 2 kV in common mode / 2 kV in wire mode for ac and dc auxiliary supplies, ac unshielded I/Os: 2 kV in common mode for analog, dc unshielded I/Os, communication, and all shielded lines: 1 kV in common mode

Name of Test	Standards	Level
surge	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/EN 61000-6-2 IEC 61000-4-5 IACS E10	for ac and dc main and auxiliary supplies, ac unshielded I/Os: 2 kV in common mode / 1 kV in differential mode for analog, dc unshielded I/Os: 0.5 kV in common mode / 0.5 kV in differential mode for communication and all shielded lines: 1 kV in common mode
conducted disturbances induced by radiated electromagnetic fields	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/EN 61000-6-2 IEC 61000-4-6 IACS E10	10 V, 0.15...80 MHz sinus amplitude modulated 80%, 1 kHz + spot frequencies
damped oscillatory wave	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC/EN 61000-4-18 IACS E10	for ac and dc main supplies and ac auxiliary supplies, ac unshielded I/Os: 2.5 kV in common mode / 1 kV in differential mode for dc auxiliary supplies, analog, dc unshielded I/Os: 1 kV in common mode / 0.5 kV in differential mode for communication and all shielded lines: 0.5 kV in common mode

**NOTE:** These tests are performed without a cabinet, with devices fixed on a metal grid and wired as per the recommendations in the Grounding and Electromagnetic Compatibility of PLC Systems, Basic Principles and Measures, User Manual ([see page 12](#)).

**NOTE:** (EC): tests required by European directives EC and based on IEC/EN 61131-2 standards.

### Electromagnetic Emissions (EC)

Name of Test	Standards	Level
conducted emission	IEC/EN 61131-2 FCC part 15 IEC/EN 61000-6-4 CISPR 11&22, Class A, Group 1 IACS E10	150...500 kHz: quasi-peak 79 dB ( $\mu\text{V/m}$ ); average 66 dB ( $\mu\text{V/m}$ ) 500 kHz...30 MHz: quasi-peak 73 dB ( $\mu\text{V/m}$ ); average 60 dB ( $\mu\text{V/m}$ ) ac and dc power (general power distribution zone): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10...150 kHz: quasi-peak 120...69 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>)</li> <li>150 kHz...0.5 MHz: quasi-peak 79 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>)</li> <li>0.5...30 MHz: quasi-peak 73 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>)</li> </ul> ac and dc power (bridge and deck zone for evaluation): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10...150 kHz: quasi-peak 96...50 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>)</li> <li>150 kHz...0.35 MHz: quasi-peak 60...50 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>)</li> <li>0.35...30 MHz: quasi-peak 50 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>)</li> </ul>

Name of Test	Standards	Level
radiated emission	IEC/EN 61131-2 FCC part 15 IEC/EN 61000-6-2 CISPR 11&22, Class A, Group 1 IACS E10	30...230 MHz: quasi-peak 40 dB ( $\mu\text{V/m}$ ) (at 10 m); 50 dB ( $\mu\text{V/m}$ ) (at 3 m) 230 MHz...1 GHz: quasi-peak 47 dB ( $\mu\text{V/m}$ ) (at 10 m); 57 dB ( $\mu\text{V/m}$ ) (at 3 m) for general power distribution zone: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0.15...30 MHz: quasi-peak 80...50 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>) (at 3 m)</li> <li>30...100 MHz: quasi-peak 60...54 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>) (at 3 m)</li> <li>100 MHz...2 GHz: quasi-peak 54 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>) (at 3 m)</li> <li>156...165 MHz: quasi-peak 24 dB (<math>\mu\text{V/m}</math>) (at 3 m)</li> </ul>

**NOTE:** (EC): tests required by European directives EC and based on IEC/EN 61131-2 standards.

### Immunity to Climatic Variations (Power On)

Name of Test	Standards	Level
dry heat	IEC 60068-2-2 (Bb & Bd)	+60 °C, t = 16 h (for ruggedized range ( <a href="#">see page 90</a> ): +70 °C, t = 16 h)
	IACS E10	+60 °C, t = 16 h and +70 °C, t = 2 h (for ruggedized range: +70 °C, t = 16 h)
cold	IEC 60068-2-1 (Ab & Ad) IACS E10	0 °C...-25 °C, t = 16 h + power on at 0 °C (for ruggedized range: power on at -25 °C)
damp heat, steady state (continuous humidity)	IEC 60068-2-78 (Cab) IACS E10	+55 °C, 93% relative humidity, t = 96 h (for ruggedized range: +60 °C)
damp heat, cyclic (cyclical humidity)	IEC 60068-2-30 (Db) IACS E10	+55...+25 °C, 93...95% relative humidity, 2 cycles t = 12 h + 12 h
change of temperature	IEC 60068-2-14 (Na & Nb)	0...+60 °C, 5 cycles t = 6 h + 6 h (for ruggedized range: -25...+70 °C)

### Withstands to Climatic Variations (Power Off)

Name of Test	Standards	Level
dry heat	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-2 (Bb & Bd) IEC/EN 60945	+85 °C, t = 96 h
cold	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-1 (Ab & Ad) IACS E10	-40 °C, t = 96 h

Name of Test	Standards	Level
damp heat, cyclic (cyclical humidity)	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-30 (Db)	+55...+25 °C, 93...95 % relative humidity, 2 cycles t = 12 h + 12 h
change of temperature (thermal shocks)	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-14 (Na & Nb)	−40...+85 °C, 5 cycles t = 3 h + 3 h

### Immunity to Mechanical Constraints (Power On)

Name of Test	Standards	Level
sinusoidal vibrations	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-6 (Fc)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• basic IEC/EN 61131-2: 5...150 Hz, +/− 3.5 mm amplitude (5...8.4 Hz), 1 g (8.4...150 Hz)</li> <li>• specific profile: 5...150 Hz, +/− 10.4 mm amplitude (5...8.4 Hz), 3 g (8.4...150 Hz)</li> <li>• for basic and specific, endurance: 10 sweep cycles for each axis</li> </ul>
	IACS E10	3...100 Hz, 1 mm amplitude (3...13.2 Hz), 0.7 g (13.2...100 Hz) endurance at each resonance frequency: 90 min for each axis, amplification coefficient < 10
	IEC 60068-2-6	sismic analysis: 3...35 Hz, 22.5 mm amplitude (3...8.1 Hz), 6 g (8.1...35 Hz)
shocks	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-27 (Ea)	30 g, 11 ms; 3 shocks/direction/axis <b>NOTE:</b> In case of using fast actuators (response time ≤15 ms) driven by relay outputs: 15 g, 11 ms; 3 shocks/direction/axis.
		25 g, 6 ms; 100 bumps/direction/axis (bumps) <b>NOTE:</b> In case of using fast actuators (response time ≤15 ms) driven by relay outputs: 15 g, 6 ms; 100 bumps/direction/axis.
free fall during operation	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-32 (Ed Method 1)	1 m, 2 falls

### Withstand to Mechanical Constraints (Power Off)

Name of Test	Standards	Level
random free fall with packaging	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-32 (Method 1)	1 m, 5 falls



Name of Test	Standards	Level
flat free fall	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-32 (Ed Method 1)	10 cm, 2 falls
controlled free fall	IEC/EN 61131-2 IEC 60068-2-31 (Ec)	30° or 10 cm, 2 falls
plugging / unplugging	IEC/EN 61131-2	for modules and connectors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>operations: 50 for permanent connections, 500 for non-permanent connections</li> </ul>

### Specific Environment

Name of Test	Standards	Level
corrosion areas - gas, salt, dust	ISA S71.4	mixed flowing gases: class G3, 25 °C, 75 % relative humidity, t = 14 days
	IEC 60721-3-3	mixed flowing gases: class 3C3, 25 °C, 75 % relative humidity, t = 14 days
	IEC 60068-2-52	salt spray: test Kb, severity 2
	IEC 60721-3-3	sand / dust: class 3S3

### Protective Enclosure

The M580 PACs are enclosed equipment designed to an IP20 level of ingress protection. For installation in industrial manufacturing workshops or in heat and humidity processing environments, install the M580 PAC in an IP54 enclosure.

**NOTE:** For IP20 compliance, use a BMX XEM 010 protective cover on empty rack slots.

A system may be installed outside an enclosure if it is operating in a restricted-access room not exceeding pollution level 2 (for example, a control room with no machines or dust-producing activities).



---

## Part II

### Installing a Local Rack

---

#### Introduction

Installation and assembly of the M580 system is a methodical process described in the following topics.

#### What Is in This Part?

This part contains the following chapters:

Chapter	Chapter Name	Page
5	Installation and Assembly of M580 Racks and Extender Module	101
6	Installation of the Power Supply, CPU, and Modules in a M580 Rack	121
7	M580 Diagnostics	135



---

# Chapter 5

## Installation and Assembly of M580 Racks and Extender Module

---

### Overview

This chapter explains how to install M580 racks and extender module.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Planning the Installation of the Local Rack	102
Mounting the Racks	106
Grounding the Rack and Power Supply Module	108
Grounding Installed Modules	110
BMX XEM 010 Protective Cover for Unused Module Slots	111
BMX XSP xxxx Protection Bar	112
Modicon X80 Rack Extender Module Installation	114

# Planning the Installation of the Local Rack

## Introduction

The size and number of racks and the kinds of modules installed on the racks are significant considerations when you are planning an installation. That installation may be either inside or outside an enclosure. The height, width, and depth of the installed system head as well as the spacing between the local and the extender racks need to be well understood.

### WARNING

#### UNEXPECTED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Install the racks lengthways and horizontally to facilitate ventilation.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

Modules such as the power supply, CPU, and I/O are cooled by natural convection. Install them on a horizontally installed rack as illustrated in this manual to maintain the necessary thermal cooling. Other rack mounting positions may cause overheating and unexpected equipment operation.

## Clearance Around the Racks

Leave a minimum space of 12 mm (0.472 in.) on the right side of each rack for cooling.

When your plan calls for extender racks, leave a minimum space of 35 mm (1.378 in.) in front of the modules. The BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module requires this clearance for the local bus connector and terminator.

## Spacing Requirements for an M580 CPU in a Local Main Rack

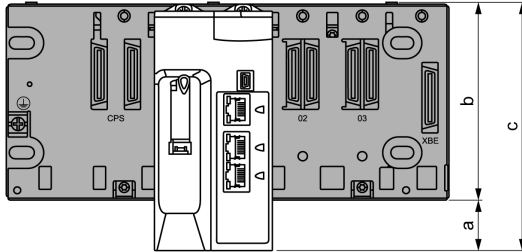
### WARNING

#### OVERHEATING AND UNEXPECTED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Maintain proper thermal clearances when installing the racks.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

In the main local rack, allow additional clearance at the bottom of the rack for the CPU. The following illustration shows the mounting dimensions when an X Bus rack is used and when an Ethernet rack is used. The overall height dimension of the main local rack in both cases is 134.6 mm (5.299 in.).



- a Additional space below the rack to accommodate the height of the CPU. For an X Bus rack, the value is 30.9 mm (1.217 in.); for an Ethernet rack, the value is 29.49 mm (1.161 in.).
- b The height of the rack. For an X Bus rack, the height is 103.7 mm (4.083 in.); for an Ethernet rack, the height is 105.11 mm (4.138 in.).
- c The height of the main local rack, 134.6 mm (5.299 in.).

### Thermal Considerations Inside an Enclosure

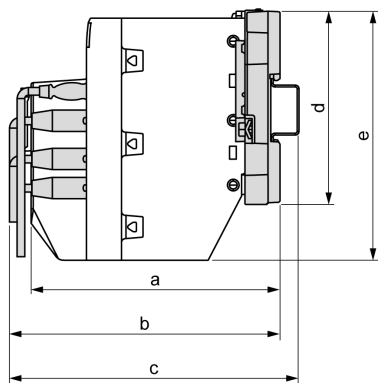
If the racks are installed in an enclosure, you need to facilitate air circulation. Use an enclosure that allows the following minimum clearances:

- 80 mm (3.15 in.) above the top of the modules on the rack
- 60 mm (2.36 in.) below the bottom of the modules on the rack
- 60 mm (2.36 in.) between modules and wiring ducts

The minimum depth of the enclosure is:

- 150 mm (5.91 in.) if the rack is fastened to a plate
- 160 mm (6.30 in.) if the rack is mounted on a 15 mm (0.59 in.) DIN rail
- If BMX XBE 1000 rack extender modules are connected, the use of BMX XBC ••K cables with connectors angled at 45° is recommended.

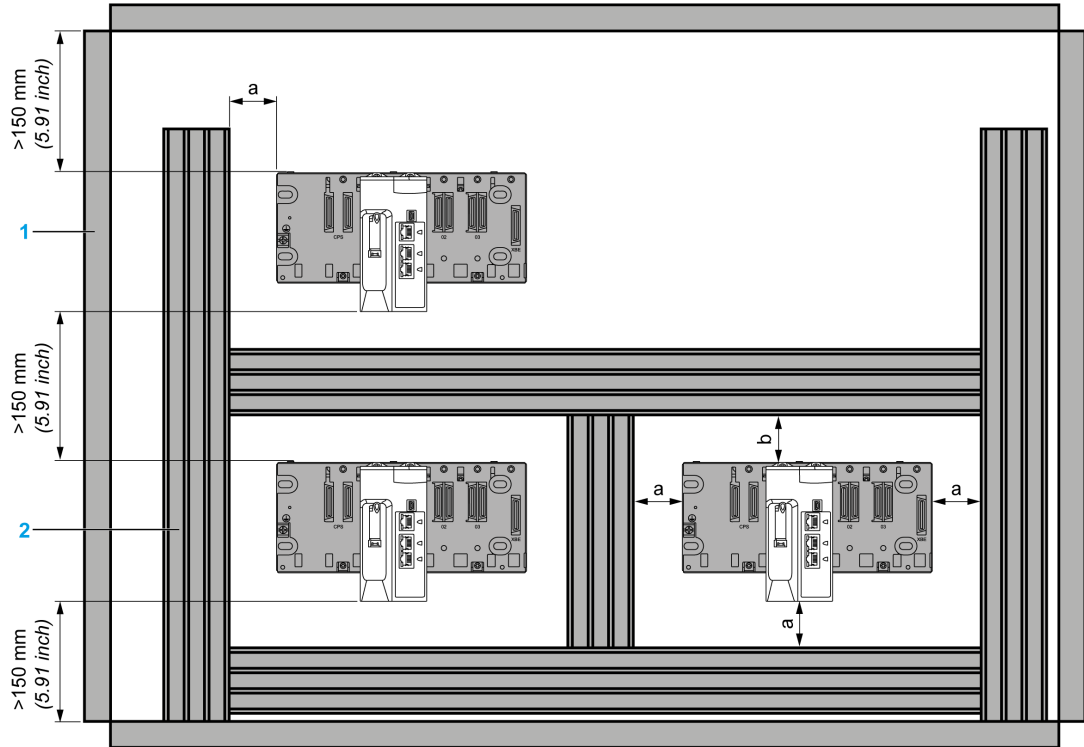
Here is a side view of a rack on a DIN rail with modules and cables mounted in an enclosure:



- a** enclosure depth: 135 mm (5.315 in.)
- b** wiring + module depth: > 146 mm (5.748 in.)
- c** wiring + module + DIN rail depth: > 156 mm (6.142 in.)
- d** rack height: for an X Bus rack 103.7 mm (4.083 in.); for an Ethernet rack, 105.11 mm (4.138 in.)
- e** module height: 134.6 mm (5.299 in.)



The following illustration shows the rules of installation in a cabinet:



- 1 installation or casing
- 2 wiring duct or tray
- a side and bottom clearance: > 60 mm (2.36 in.)
- b top clearance: > 80 mm (3.15 in.)

# Mounting the Racks

## Introduction

Ethernet and X Bus racks may be mounted on:

- DIN rails
- walls
- Telequick mounting grids

**NOTE:** Mount the racks on a properly grounded metallic surface to allow the PAC to operate correctly in the presence of electromagnetic interference.

**NOTE:** The mounting screws on the left side of the backplane may be accessible without unplugging the power supply module. Mount the backplane using the far left fastening hole on the panel.

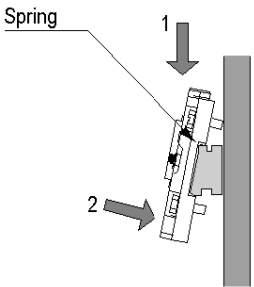
## Mounting on a DIN Rail

Most racks can be mounted on DIN rails that are 35 mm (1.38 in.) wide and 15 mm (0.59 in.) deep.

**NOTE:** Racks longer than 400 mm (15.75 in.) and support more than 8 module slots are not compatible with DIN rail mounting. Do not mount a BME XBP 1200 (H), or BMX XBP 1200 (PV:02 or later) (H) rack on a DIN rail.

**NOTE:** When mounted on a DIN rail, the system is more susceptible to mechanical stress ([see page 96](#)).

Mounting a rack on a DIN rail:

Step	Action	Illustration
1	Position the rack on the top of the DIN rail and press down the top of the rack to compress the springs in contact with the DIN rail.	
2	Tilt the bottom of the rack backwards to flatten it against the DIN rail.	
3	Release the rack to lock it.	

To remove a rack from a DIN rail:

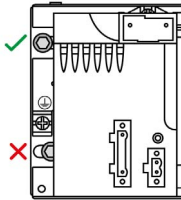
Step	Action
1	Press down the top of the rack to compress the springs in contact with the DIN rail.

Step	Action
2	Tilt the bottom of the rack forward to disengage it from the DIN rail.
3	Release the freed rack.

### Mounting on a Wall

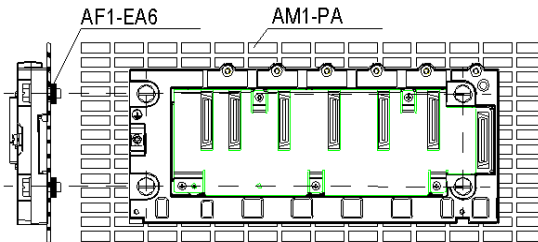
You can mount a rack on a wall inside or out of an enclosure with M4, M5, M6, or UNC #6 screws inserted in the fastening holes ([see page 75](#)).

Place the 2 left side screws (near the power supply) as close as possible to the left edge of the rack. This enables you to access the screws after the power supply is mounted.



### Mounting on Telequick Grid AM1-PA and AM3-PA Mounting Grids

You can mount a rack on a Telequick AM1-PA or AM3-PA mounting grid using M4, M5, M6, or UNC #6 screws.



## Grounding the Rack and Power Supply Module

### Grounding the Rack

To ground the racks, connect a ground cable between the protective earth ground of the installation and the screw located on the left-hand side of the rack, close to the power supply module. This screw is used to connect two 1.5...2.5 mm<sup>2</sup> cables.

Ground every rack in the PAC system.

### Grounding the Power Supply Module

Ground each power supply module in the system.

#### **DANGER**

##### **HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK**

Ground the power supplies by connecting the protective earth ground terminal on each power supply module to the protective earth ground of the installation. Connect them in either of the following ways:

- Connect the protective earth ground terminal of the power supply to the protective earth ground of the installation with a separate cable, independent of the rack ground cable.
- Connect the protective earth ground terminal of the power supply to the ground screw of the rack (where the rack itself is grounded).

Do not connect anything else to the power supply ground.

**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**

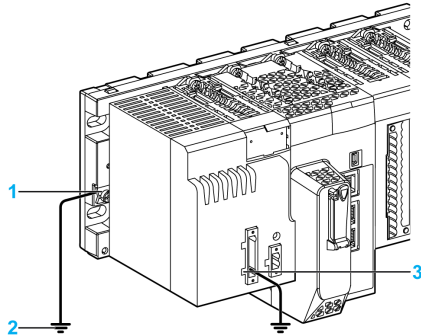
#### **DANGER**

##### **HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK**

- Use only cables with ring or spade lugs and check that there is a good ground connection.
- Make sure that grounding hardware is tightened properly.

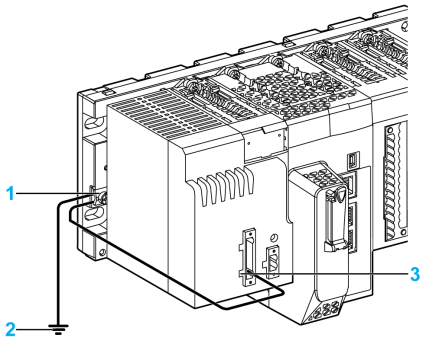
**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**

The following illustration shows how the rack and the power supply module are grounded using 2 independent ground cables:



- 1 rack protective earth ground screw
- 2 protective earth ground
- 3 power supply module terminal block (**PE**)

The following illustration shows how the rack and the power supply module are grounded using the **PE** terminals connected to each other:



- 1 rack protective earth ground screw
- 2 protective earth ground
- 3 power supply module terminal block (**PE**)

Previous wiring illustration is possible only if the cable extremities (which are screwed to the grounding bus of the rack) have ring or spade lugs able to maintain permanent fastening even if the screw is slack.

## Grounding Installed Modules

### Grounding CPUs and Power Supplies

#### **DANGER**

##### **HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH**

Check that ground connection contacts are available and not bent out of shape. If they are bent or not available, do not use the module and contact your Schneider Electric representative.

**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**

#### **WARNING**

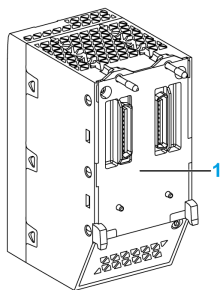
##### **UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION**

Tighten the clamping screws of the modules. A bad module connection can lead to an unexpected behavior of the system.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

### Grounding the Modules

All modules are equipped with ground connection contacts at the rear for grounding purposes (following example shows a CPU module):



**1** ground connection contact

These contacts connect the grounding bus of the modules to the grounding bus of the rack.

## BMX XEM 010 Protective Cover for Unused Module Slots

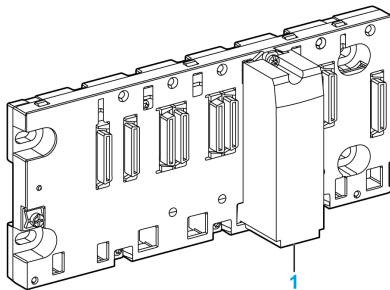
### Introduction

If a rack has unused module slots, install a BMX XEM 010 cover to keep dust and other objects out of the slots and to comply with IP20 ingress protection requirements. ([see page 97](#))

BMX XEM 010 covers are sold in sets of 5.

### Illustration

Install and attach a BMX XEM 010 cover to the rack like a normal module. Here a cover is placed in an unused module slot in a BME XBP 0400 rack:



1 BMX XEM 010 cover

## BMX XSP xxxx Protection Bar

### Introduction

Connect the cable shielding directly to the ground and not to the module shielding to help protect the system from electromagnetic perturbations.

Use a protection bar in the 3 following cases:

- counting module with 10-pin, 16-pin, and 20-pin terminal blocks
- analog module with 20-pin terminal block and 40-pin connector
- processor connected to an XBT console via the USB port

Fasten the protection bar at each end of the rack to provide a connection between the cable and the grounding screw.

### Protection Bar Kits References

The protection bar kit references are as follows:

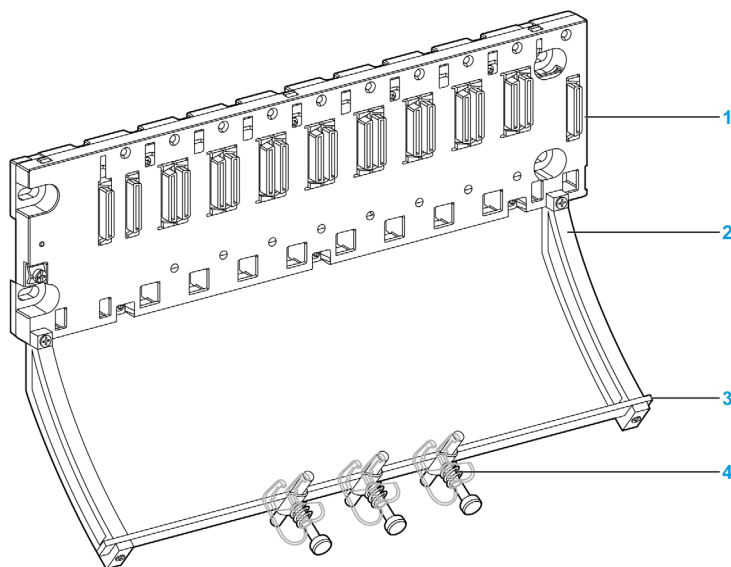
- BMX XSP 0400 bar is fastened to a:
  - BMX XBP 0400 (PV:02 or later) (H) rack
  - BME XBP 0400 (H) rack
- BMX XSP 0600 bar is fastened to a:
  - BMX XBP 0600 (PV:02 or later) (H) rack
- BMX XSP 0800 bar is fastened to a:
  - BMX XBP 0800 (PV:02 or later) (H) rack
  - BME XBP 0800 (H) rack
- BMX XSP 1200 bar is fastened to a:
  - BMX XBP 1200 (PV:02 or later) (H) rack
  - BME XBP 1200 (H) rack

Each kit includes the following components:

- 1 metallic bar
- 2 bases
- 1 set of spring locking clamp rings to fasten the cables to the protection bar.



Example of protection bar fastened to a Modicon M580 rack:



- 1 rack
- 2 base
- 3 metallic bar
- 4 clamp ring

Clamp rings are sold in sets of 10 and are available under the following references:

- STB XSP 3010: small rings to fasten USB connection cables
- STB XSP 3020: large rings to fasten analog and counting modules connection cables

**NOTE:** A protection bar does not modify the volume required when installing and uninstalling modules.

### Connecting a Console to a CPU

2 connection cables are available to connect a human-machine interface to the CPU USB port:

- BMX XCA USB 018: 1.8 m cable
- BMX XCA USB 045: 4.5 m cable

Each cable ends with 2 different connectors:

- Type A USB: console connector.  
A metallic ground connection is provided close to the connector to be screwed to a grounded object
- Type mini-B USB: CPU connector.  
A metallic ground connection is provided close to the connector to be screwed to a grounded object.  
A bare section of cable is provided close to the connector to be fastened to the protection bar with a clamp ring.

## Modicon X80 Rack Extender Module Installation

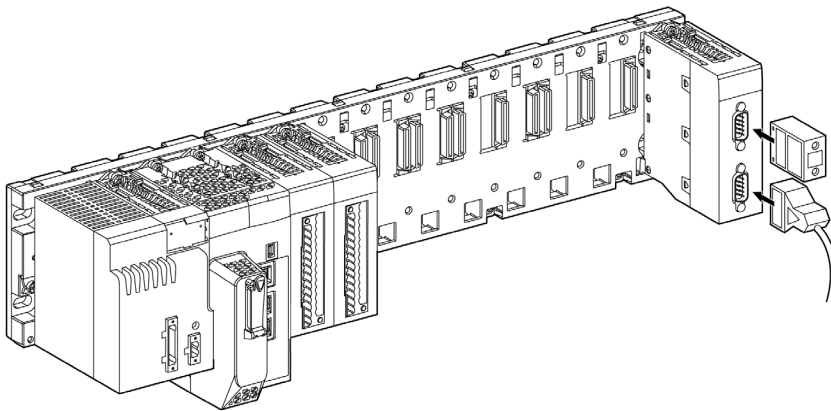
### Introduction

When your installation has more than one rack in the local rack or at a remote drop, install a BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module on the main rack and the extended racks. Rack extender modules are connected together by X Bus extension cables.

### Extender Module Placement in an X80 Rack

This module goes in each rack in the slot marked **XBE** on the right side of the rack.

The following illustration shows a main local rack set up to support extended racks. On the left side of the rack are the power supply, the CPU, and some X80 I/O modules. On the right side of the rack is a BMX XBE 1000 extender module:



### Extension Cables

The BMX XBE 1000 rack extender modules on each rack are connected with BMX XBC ••K or TSX CBY ••K extension cables ([see page 69](#)). A BMX XBC ••K cable is used to connect to an X80 I/O extension. A TSX CBY ••K cable is used to connect to a Premium I/O extension.

**NOTE:** Premium I/O extensions are permitted in the local rack only. You cannot use Premium I/O in a remote drop.

## Line Terminators in X80 Racks

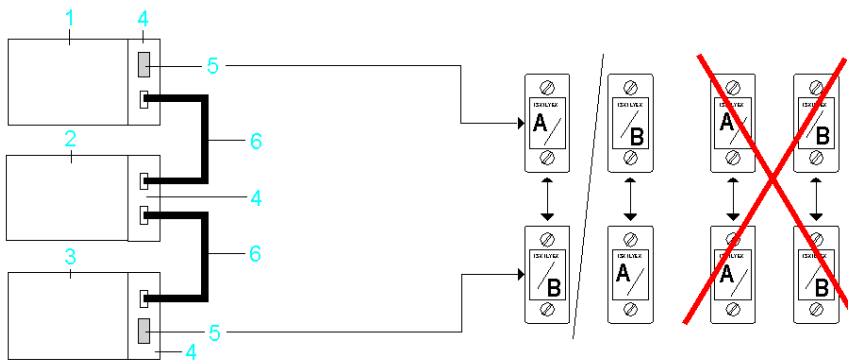
### DANGER

#### HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK

Remove power from all elements of the station (the local rack or remote drop) before inserting or extracting a line terminator.

**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**

Terminate the unconnected 9-pin SUB-D connectors on any BMX XBE 1000 modules. One connector in the main rack and one connector in the last rack in the extension are unused. Insert a TSX TLY EX line terminator in each of the unused connectors ([see page 70](#)):



- 1 X80 main rack
- 2 first X80 extension rack
- 3 last X80 extension rack
- 4 BMX XBE 1000 modules in each rack
- 5 TSX TLY EX line terminator in the main rack and the last rack
- 6 BMX XBC ...K or TSX CBY ...K extension cables between each rack

Line terminators are labeled **A/** or **/B**. An extended rack needs to use one line terminator labeled **A/** and one labeled **/B**. If you terminate the unused connector in the main rack with an **A/** terminator, then you need to terminate the unused connector in the last rack with a **/B** terminator.

## Line Terminators in X80 Rack with Premium Extendable Racks

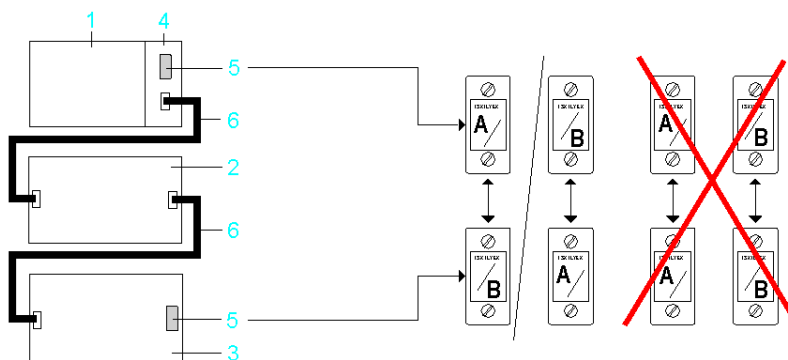
### DANGER

#### HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK

Remove power from all elements of the station (the local rack or remote drop) before inserting or extracting a line terminator.

**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**

Unconnected 9-pin SUB-D connectors on any BMX XBE 1000 modules or Premium extendable rack need to be terminated. One connector in the main rack and one connector in the last rack in the extension are unused. Insert a TSX TLY EX line terminator in each of the unused connectors (*see page 70*):



- 1 X80 main rack
- 2 First Premium extension rack
- 3 Last Premium extension rack
- 4 BMX XBE 1000 module
- 5 TSX TLY EX line terminator in the main rack and the last rack
- 6 BMX XBC ...K or TSX CBY ...K extension cables between each rack

Line terminators are labeled **A/** or **/B**. An extended rack needs to use one line terminator labeled **A/** and one labeled **/B**. If you terminate the unused connector in the main rack with an **A/** terminator, then you need to terminate the unused connector in the last rack with a **/B** terminator.

## Extender Module Installation in an X80 Rack

The BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module is installed similarly to the other modules in the rack with these special considerations:

- The **XBE** slot is not a standard module slot. It is reserved for a BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module. No other module type can be installed in the **XBE** slot.
- The BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module cannot be installed in any slot other than the **XBE** slot.
- If a BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module is not present in the main rack of the extension, none of the extender racks will be operational.
- If a BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module is not present in an extended rack, that rack will not be operational.
- Each rack with a BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module in it needs to be assigned an address from 00 to 08. The address assigned to each rack in an extension needs to be unique with respect to all other racks in the extension. Rack addresses are set manually using the 4 microswitches on the side of the BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module ([see page 60](#)).
- The main rack in the extension needs to be given address 00, which is the factory default setting for the switches.



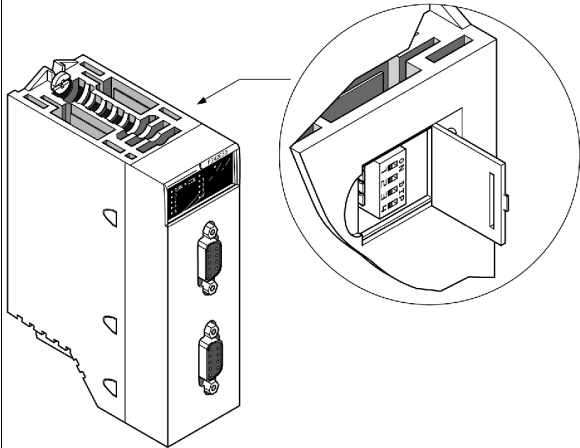
### HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK

Remove all power sources before installing the rack extender module.

**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**

Follow these steps to install a rack extender module in a rack:

Step	Action
1	Remove all power sources to the rack.

Step	Action
2	<p>Using the microswitches on the side of the rack extender module, set a unique address for that rack from 00 to 08:</p>  The diagram shows a rack extender module. A circular inset provides a close-up view of the top of the module, highlighting a set of microswitches used for address configuration. An arrow points from the inset to the corresponding location on the main module.
3	<p>Insert the rack extender module in the slot labeled <b>XBE</b>.</p>
4	<p>Connect each rack in the extension to the rack immediately before it and immediately after it using the appropriate extension cable.</p>
5	<p>Terminate the unused connector on the extender module in the main rack and the unused connector on the last rack in the extension. Use a line terminator labeled <b>A/</b> on one end of the extension and a line terminator labeled <b>/B</b> on the other end of the extension.</p>

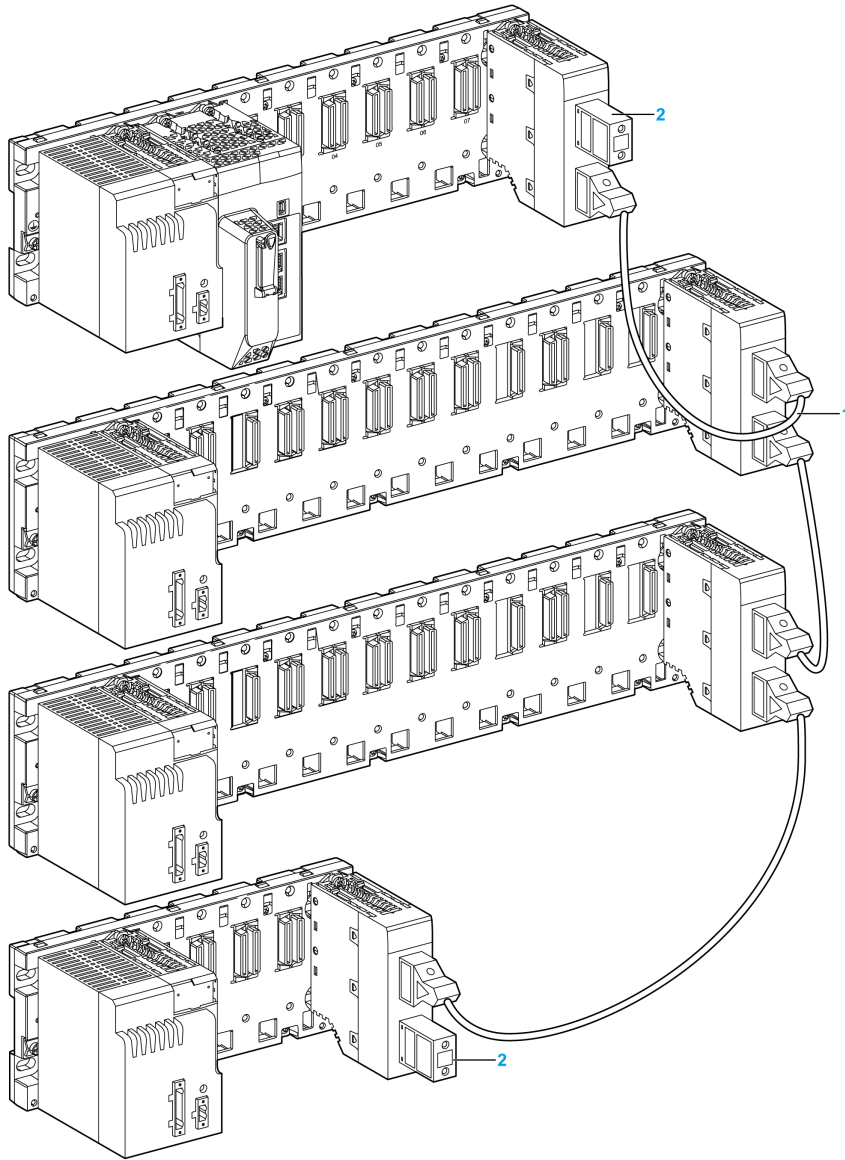
**Extender Module Grounding**

The BMX XBE 1000 rack extender module has ground connection contacts (*see page 110*).

**Building an M580 System Using BME XBP ••00 Racks**

Thanks to the BMX XBE 1000 extender modules and cables, a specific quantity of racks (*see page 57*) can be added to a local or remote drop main rack.

Example of Modicon X80 main rack with extension racks and extender modules and cables:



- 1 The same station can contain racks of different sizes that are interconnected by extension cables.
- 2 The extender modules located at the extremities of the interconnected cables are terminated.





---

# Chapter 6

## Installation of the Power Supply, CPU, and Modules in a M580 Rack

---

### Overview

This chapter explains how to install the modules in a M580 rack.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Definition of Protection Devices at the Start of the Line	122
Power Supply, CPU, and Module Guidelines	124
Installing the CPU	125
Installing a Power Supply Module	128
Installing an SD Memory Card in a CPU	129

## Definition of Protection Devices at the Start of the Line

### Introduction

It is recommended that you install a protection device at the start of the line on the power supply network, including the following elements:

- circuit breaker
- fuse

The following information allows definition of the minimum caliber circuit breaker and fuse for a given power supply module.

### Choice of Line Circuit Breaker

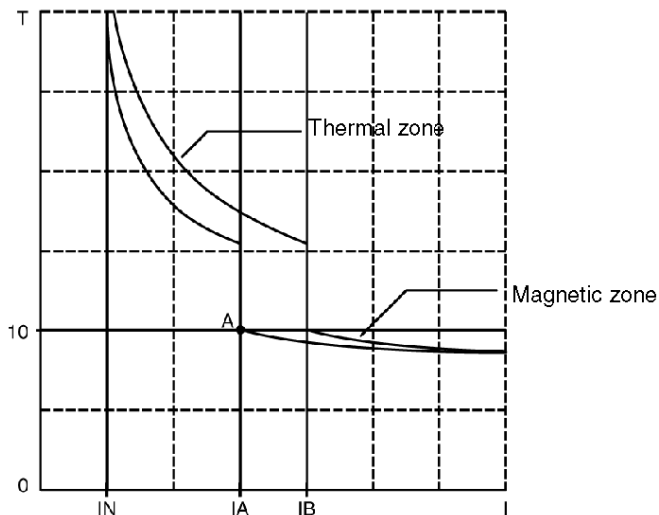
When you choose the caliber of the line circuit breaker, consider:

- nominal input current ( $I_{rms}$ )
- signaling current ( $I$ )
- current characteristic ( $I_t$ )

The choice of minimum circuit breaker caliber is made according to the following rules:

- IN circuit breaker caliber greater than the power supply nominal input current ( $I_{rms}$ )
- maximum circuit breaker caliber greater than the power supply signaling current ( $I$ )
- current characteristic ( $I_t$ ) at point A of the curve greater than the power supply characteristic ( $I_t$ )

The following graph shows an example of characteristics provided by a circuit breaker manufacturer:



## Choice of Line Fuse

When you choose the caliber of the line fuse, consider:

- current characteristic ( $I^2t$ )

The choice of minimum fuse caliber is made according to the following rules:

- IN fuse caliber greater than 3 times the power supply nominal input current  $I_{rms}$
- fuse current characteristic  $I^2t$  greater than 3 times the power supply characteristic  $I^2t$

The following table shows the characteristics of each power supply module:

Power Supply Module		BMX CPS 2000	BMX CPS 3500	BMX CPS 3540T	BMX CPS 2010	BMX CPS 3020
nominal input current $I_{rms}$	at 24 Vdc	-	-	-	1 A	1.65 A
	at 48 Vdc	-	-	-	-	0.83 A
	at 115 Vac	0.61 A	1.04 A	-	-	-
	at 125 Vdc	-	-	0.36 A	-	-
	at 230 Vac	0.31 A	0.52 A	-	-	-
signaling current $I$ (1)	at 24 Vdc	-	-	-	30 A	30 A
	at 48 Vdc	-	-	-	-	60 A
	at 115 Vac	30 A	30 A	-	-	-
	at 125 Vdc	-	-	30 A	-	-
	at 230 Vac	60 A	60 A	-	-	-
current characteristic $I t$	at 24 Vdc	-	-	-	0.15 As	0.2 As
	at 48 Vdc	-	-	-	-	0.3 As
	at 115 Vac	0.03 As	0.05 As	-	-	-
	at 125 Vdc	-	-	0.05 As	-	-
	at 230 Vac	0.06 As	0.07 As	-	-	-
current characteristic $I^2 t$	at 24 Vdc	-	-	-	0.6 A <sup>2</sup> s	1 A <sup>2</sup> s
	at 48 Vdc	-	-	-	-	3 A <sup>2</sup> s
	at 115 Vac	0.5 A <sup>2</sup> s	1 A <sup>2</sup> s	-	-	-
	at 125 Vdc	-	-	2 A <sup>2</sup> s	-	-
	at 230 Vac	2 A <sup>2</sup> s	3 A <sup>2</sup> s	-	-	-

1 values at initial power-up and at 25 °C (77 °F)

# Power Supply, CPU, and Module Guidelines

## Introduction

A valid local rack contains at least a power supply and a CPU. A valid remote rack contains at least an adapter module, a power supply, and an X80 module.

## Module Guidelines

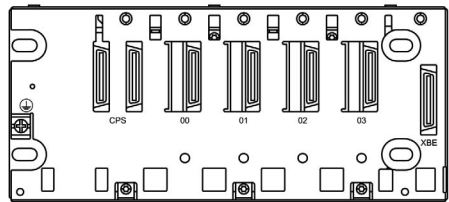
Rack Position	Rack Type	Slots Marking				
		CPS (X80) PS (Premium)	00	01	02	...n (1)
local	main rack	power supply	CPU		module	module
	X80 extension rack	power supply	module	module	module	module
	Premium extension rack	power supply	module	module	module	module
remote drop	main rack	power supply	(e)X80 EIO adapter module	module	module	module
	extension rack	power supply	module	module	module	module
1 slots from number 03 to last numbered slot of the rack						

**NOTE:** When your installation has more than one rack in the local rack or at a remote drop, the BMX XBE 1000 rack exender module goes in the slot marked **XBE** of the X80 racks.

Check that the CPU is installed in the 2 slots marked **00** and **01** on the local rack before powering up the system. If the CPU is not installed in these 2 slots, the CPU will start in **NO\_CONF** state and use the configured IP address (not the default IP address).

## Rack Markings

Example of BMX XBP .... (PV:02 or later) rack with slot markings:



## Installing the CPU

### Introduction

A BME P58 .... CPU can be installed in the following racks:

- BMX XBP .... (PV:02 or later) X Bus rack
- BME XBP ..00 Ethernet rack

### Installation Precautions

A BME P58 .... CPU is powered by the rack bus so confirm that the rack power supply is turned off before installing the CPU.

#### DANGER

##### HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK

Remove all power sources before installing the CPU.

**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**

Remove the protective cover from the rack slot connectors before plugging the module in the rack.

#### WARNING

##### UNEXPECTED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Check that the CPU does not contain an unsupported SD memory card before powering up the CPU.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

**NOTE:** Check that the memory card slot door is closed after a memory card is inserted in the CPU.

**NOTE:** Refer to %SW97 to check the status of the SD card.

### Grounding Considerations

#### DANGER

##### ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

- Switch off the power supply to the PAC at both ends of the connection before inserting or removing an Ethernet cable.
- Use suitable insulation equipment when inserting or removing all or part of this equipment.

**Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.**

Refer to your system hardware reference manual for details about the DRSs.

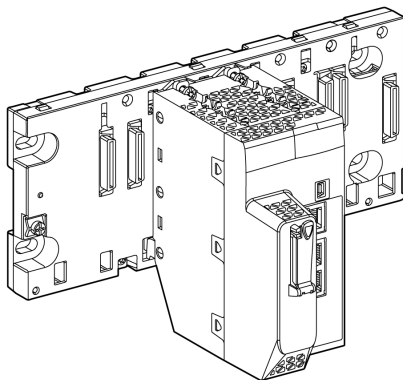
Use fiber-optic cable to establish a communications link when it is not possible to equalize the potential between the 2 grounds.

**NOTE:** Refer to the ground protection information provided in the Grounding and Electromagnetic Compatibility of PLC Systems, Basic Principles and Measures, User Manual ([see page 12](#)) and Control Panel Technical Guide, How to protect a machine from malfunctions due to electromagnetic disturbance ([see page 12](#)).

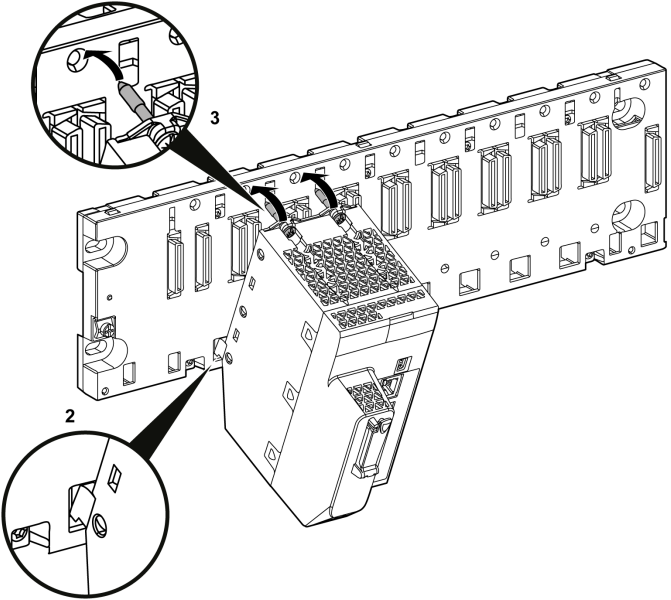
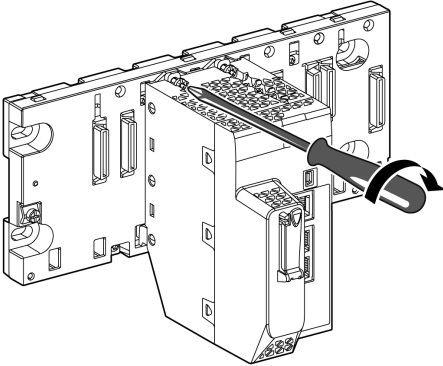
### Installing the CPU in the Rack

Install the CPU in the rack slots marked **00** and **01**. If you do not install the CPU in these 2 slots, it will start in **NO\_CONF** state and use the default IP address.

Example of BME P58 .... CPU installed in a BME XBP 0400 rack:



Follow these steps to install a CPU in a rack:

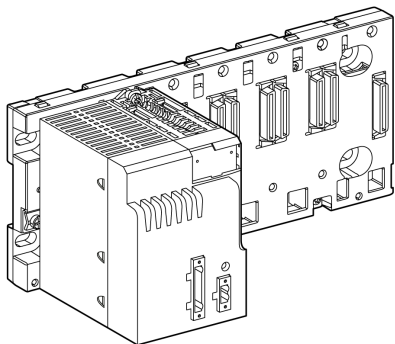
Step	Action	Illustration
1	Verify that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the power supply is turned off</li> <li>if an SD memory card is used, it is supported by the CPU</li> <li>the connectors' protective covers are removed</li> <li>the CPU is placed on the slots marked <b>00</b> and <b>01</b></li> </ul>	
2	Position the locating pins situated at the rear of the module (on the bottom part) in the corresponding slots in the rack.	
3	Swivel the module towards the top of the rack so that the module sits flush with the back of the rack. The module is now set in position.	
4	Tighten the 2 screws on top of the CPU to maintain the module in place on the rack. tightening torque: 1.5 N.m (1.106 lbf ft) max.	

## Installing a Power Supply Module

### Introduction

Install the power supply module in the first 2 slots of each rack marked **CPS**.

Example of power supply module installed in a BME XBP 0400 rack:



**NOTE:** The power supply module design only allows it to be placed in the dedicated slots.

### Installing the Power Supply Module in a Rack

To install a BMX CPS .... power supply module in a rack, follow the procedure for installing a BME P58 .... CPU ([see page 125](#)).

### Grounding the Power Supply Module

The power supply is equipped with ground connection contacts ([see page 110](#)).



## Installing an SD Memory Card in a CPU

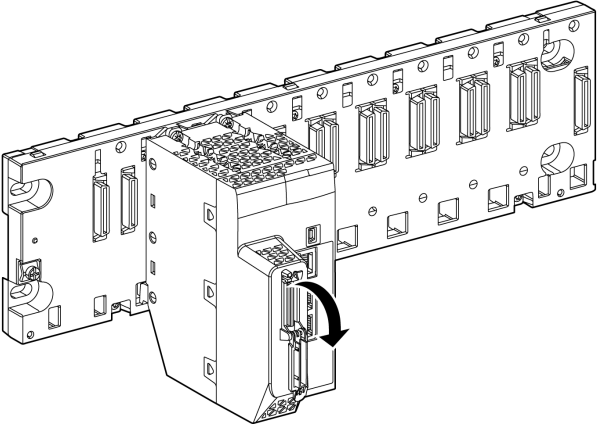
### Memory Card Maintenance

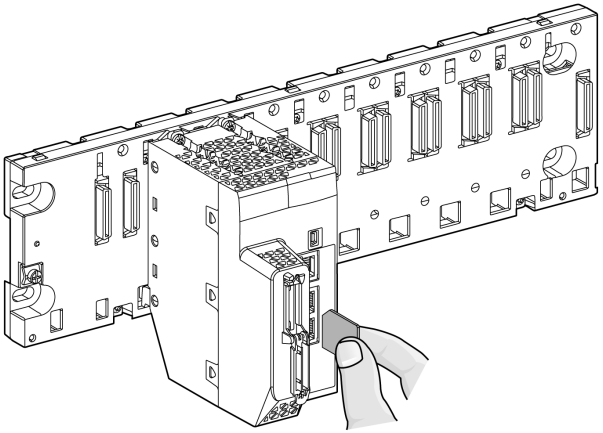
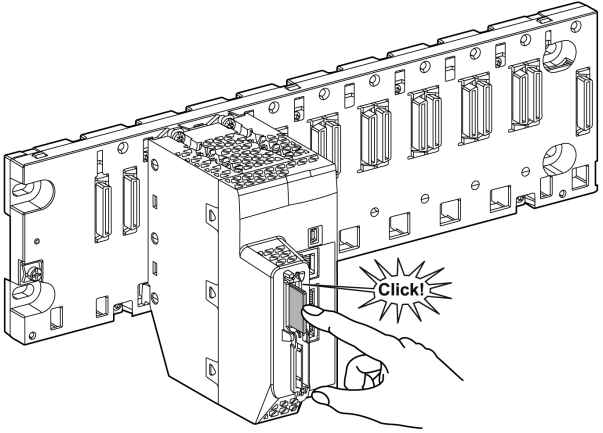
To keep the memory card in normal working order:

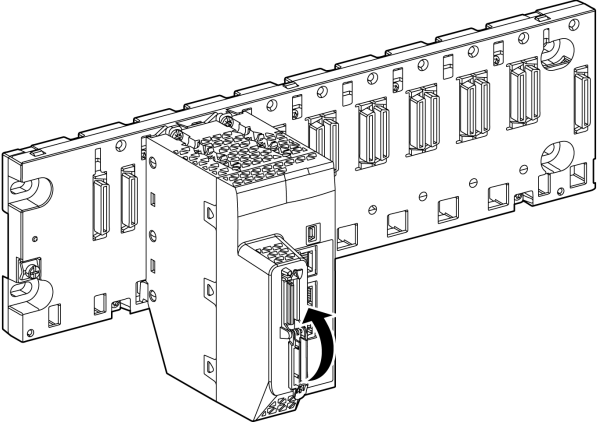
- Avoid removing the memory card from its slot when the CPU accesses the card (memory card access green LED ON or blinking).
- Avoid touching the memory card connectors.
- Keep the memory card away from electrostatic and electromagnetic sources as well as heat, sunlight, water, and moisture.
- Avoid impact on the memory card.
- Before sending a memory card by post, check the postal service security policy. In some countries, the postal service exposes mail to high levels of radiation as a security measure. These high levels of radiation may erase the contents of the memory card and render it unusable.
- If a card is extracted without generating a rising edge of the bit %S65 and without checking that the memory card access green LED is OFF, the data (files, application, and so on) may be lost or become unreliable.

### Memory Card Insertion Procedure

Procedure for inserting a memory card into a BME P58 ••• CPU:

Step	Description	Illustration
1	Open the SD memory card protective door by pulling the top of the door towards you.	

Step	Description	Illustration
2	Insert the card in its slot.	
3	<p>Push the memory card until you hear a click.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The card should now be clipped into its slot.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Insertion of the memory card does not force an application restore.</p>	

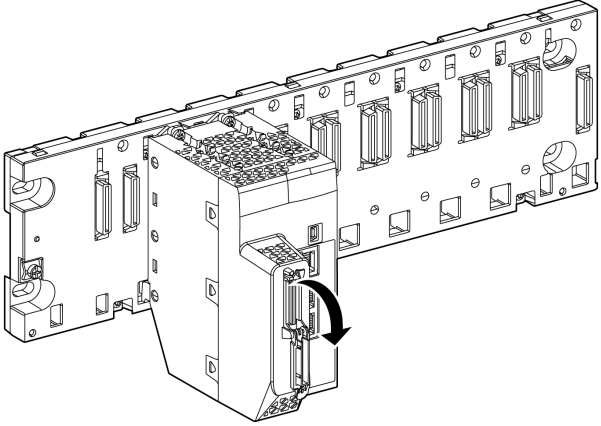
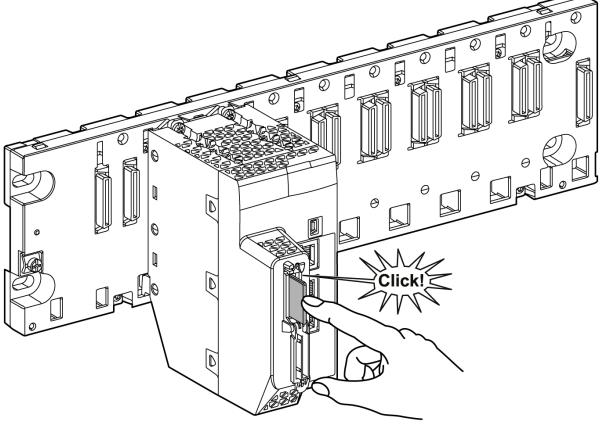
Step	Description	Illustration
4	Close the memory card protective door.	

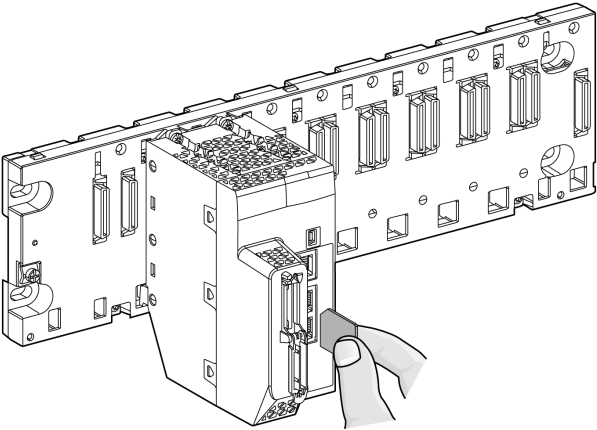
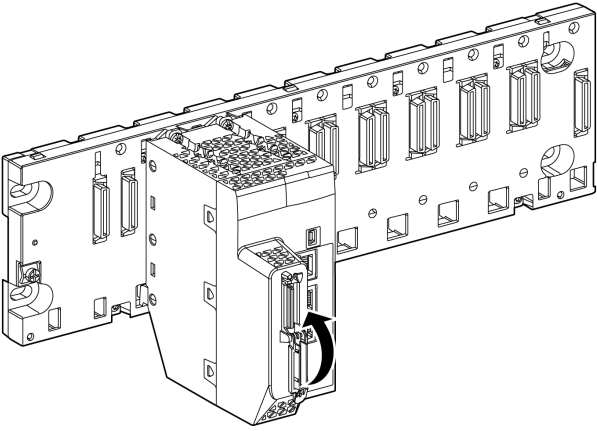
### Memory Card Removal Procedure

**NOTE:** Before removing a memory card, a rising edge on bit %S65 needs to be generated. If a card is extracted without generating a rising edge of the bit %S65 and without checking that the memory card access green LED is OFF, the data may be lost.

Procedure for removing a memory card from a BME P58 ••• CPU:

Step	Description	Illustration
1	Generate a rising edge on bit %S65.	—
2	Check that the memory card access green LED is OFF.	—

Step	Description	Illustration
3	<p>Open the SD memory card protective door by pulling the top of the cover towards you.</p>	 A perspective view of the device's front panel. The SD memory card slot is located on the right side. A black arrow points upwards from the top of the protective door, indicating the direction to pull it open.
4	<p>Push the memory card until you hear a click, then release the pressure on the card. <b>Result:</b> The card should unclip from its slot.</p>	 A perspective view of the device's front panel, similar to the previous illustration. A hand is shown pushing a memory card into the slot. A starburst graphic with the word "Click!" is positioned next to the card, indicating the point of successful insertion.

Step	Description	Illustration
5	Remove the card from its slot. <b>Note:</b> The memory card access green LED is ON when the memory card is removed from the CPU.	 A line drawing of a CPU module with a memory card slot. A hand is shown pulling the memory card out of the slot. The module has several other slots and components visible.
6	Close the memory card protective door.	 A line drawing of the same CPU module. A curved arrow indicates the protective door is being closed over the memory card slot. The door is a small flap that covers the slot.



---

# Chapter 7

## M580 Diagnostics

---

### Introduction

This chapter provides information on diagnostics that can be performed via hardware indications (based on LED status) and system bits or words when necessary. The entire M580 system diagnostics is explained in the *Modicon M580 System Planning Guide*.

The CPU manages different types of detected error:

- detected errors that can be recovered and do not change the PAC behavior unless specific options are used
- detected errors that cannot be recovered and lead the CPU to the halt state
- CPU or system detected errors that lead the CPU to an error state

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Blocking Conditions	136
Non-blocking Conditions	138
CPU or System Errors	139
CPU Application Compatibility	140

## Blocking Conditions

### Introduction

Blocking conditions caused during the execution of the application program do not cause system errors but they stop the CPU. The CPU goes into the HALT state ([see page 24](#)).

### Diagnostics

Visual indications of a blocking condition are the **ERR** LED on the CPU front panel ([see page 33](#)).

A description of the error is provided in system word %SW125.

The address of the instruction that was executing when the blocking condition occurred is provided by system words %SW126 through %SW127.

%SW125 system word values and corresponding blocking condition description:

%SW125 Value (hex)	Blocking Condition Description
0...	execution of an unknown function
0002	SD card signature feature (used with SIG_CHECK and SIG_WRITE functions)
2258	execution of the HALT instruction
2259	execution flow different than the reference flow
23..	execution of a CALL function towards an undefined subroutine
81F4	SFC node incorrect
82F4	SFC code inaccessible
83F4	SFC work space inaccessible
84F4	too much initial SFC steps
85F4	too much active SFC steps
86F4	SFC sequence code incorrect
87F4	SFC code description incorrect
88F4	SFC reference table incorrect
89F4	SFC internal index calculation detected error
8AF4	SFC step status not available
8BF4	SFC memory too small after a change due to a download
8CF4	transition/action section inaccessible
8DF4	SFC work space too small
8EF4	version of the SFC code older than the interpreter
8FF4	version of the SFC code more recent than the interpreter
90F4	poor description of an SFC object: NULL pointer
91F4	action identifier not authorized



<b>%SW125 Value (hex)</b>	<b>Blocking Condition Description</b>
92F4	poor definition of the time for an action identifier
93F4	macro step cannot be found in the list of active steps for deactivation
94F4	overflow in the action table
95F4	overflow in the step activation/deactivation table
9690	error detected in the application CRC check (checksum)
DE87	calculation detected error on numbers with decimal points
DEB0	watchdog overrun
DEF0	division by 0
DEF1	character string transfer detected error
DEF2	capacity exceeded
DEF3	index overrun
DEF7	SFC execution detected error
DEFE	SFC steps undefined

### Restarting the Application

After a blocking condition has occurred, the halted CPU needs to be initialized. The CPU can also be initialized by setting the %S0 bit to 1.

When initialized, the application behaves as follows:

- the data resume their initial value
- tasks are stopped at end of cycle
- the input image is refreshed
- outputs are controlled in fallback position

The RUN command then allows the application to be restarted.

## Non-blocking Conditions

### Introduction

The system enters a non-blocking condition when it detects an input/output error on the backplane bus (X Bus or Ethernet) or through execution of an instruction, which can be processed by the user program and does not modify the CPU status.

### Conditions Linked to I/O Diagnostics

A non-blocking condition linked to the I/O is diagnosed with the following indications:

- CPU I/O LED pattern: steady ON
- module I/O LED pattern: steady ON
- system bits (type of error):
  - %S10 set to 0: I/O error detected on one of the modules on the rack (channel power supply detected error, or broken channel, or module not compliant with the configuration, or inoperative module, or module power supply detected error)
  - %S16 set to 0: I/O error detected in the task in progress
  - %S40–%S47 set to 0: I/O error detected on rack address 0 to 7
- system bits and words combined with the channel having an error detected (I/O channel number and type of detected error) or I/O module Device DDT information (for modules configured in Device DDT addressing mode):
  - bit %Ir.m.c.ERR set to 1: channel error detected (implicit exchanges)
  - word %MWr.m.c.2: the word value indicates the type of error detected on the specified channel and depends on the I/O module (implicit exchanges)

### Conditions Linked to Execution of the Program Diagnostics

A non-blocking condition linked to execution of the program is diagnosed with the following system bits and words:

- system bits (type of error detected):
  - %S15 set to 1: character string manipulation error detected
  - %S18 set to 1: capacity overrun, error detected on a floating point, or division by 0
  - %S20 set to 1: index overrun
- system word (nature of the error detected):
  - %SW125 ([see page 136](#)) (always updated)

**NOTE:** The CPU can be forced to the HALT state ([see page 24](#)) on program execution recoverable condition.

There are 2 ways to force a CPU to stop when non-blocking errors linked to the execution of the program are detected:

- Use the diagnostic program function accessible through Unity Pro programming software.
- set the system bit %S78 (HALTIFERROR) to 1.

## CPU or System Errors

### Introduction

CPU or system errors are related either to the CPU (equipment or software) or to the rack internal bus wiring. The system can no longer operate correctly when these errors occur.

A CPU or system error causes the CPU to stop in ERROR mode and requires a cold restart. Before applying a cold restart, set the CPU to STOP mode to keep the PAC from returning to ERROR mode.

### Diagnostics

A CPU or system error is diagnosed with the following indications:

- CPU I/O LED pattern: steady on
- system word %SW124 value defines the detected error source:
  - 80 hex: system watchdog error or rack internal bus wiring error
  - 81 hex: rack internal bus wiring error
  - 90 hex: interruption not foreseen, or system task pile overrun

# CPU Application Compatibility

## Application Compatibility

The following table shows which CPUs have the ability to download and execute applications that are built on a different CPU:

Download and Execute on the CPUs →	1020	2020	2040	3020	3040	4020	4040
An Application Built on the Following CPUs ↓							
1020	X	X	–	X	–	X	–
2020	–	X	–	X	–	X	–
2040	–	–	X	–	X	–	X
3020	–	–	–	X	–	X	–
3040	–	–	–	–	X	–	X
4020	–	–	–	–	–	X	–
4040	–	–	–	–	–	–	X
X yes – no							

**Example:** An application built on a BME P58 3020 CPU can only be downloaded or executed on a BME P58 3020 or a BME P58 4020 CPU.

---

## Part III

### Configuring the CPU in Unity Pro

---

#### Introduction

This part describes how to configure a M580 system with Unity Pro.

#### What Is in This Part?

This part contains the following chapters:

Chapter	Chapter Name	Page
8	M580 CPU Configuration	143
9	M580 CPU Programming and Operating Modes	295



---

# Chapter 8

## M580 CPU Configuration

---

### Introduction

The chapter describes the configuration of the M580 CPU.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
8.1	Unity Pro Projects	144
8.2	Configuring the CPU with Unity Pro	150
8.3	The Unity Pro FDT/DTM Interface	167
8.4	Configuring the M580 CPU with DTMs in Unity Pro	184
8.5	Diagnostics through the Unity Pro DTM Browser	191
8.6	Online Action	208
8.7	DTM Device Lists	215
8.8	Explicit Messaging	224
8.9	Implicit Messaging	229
8.10	Configuring the M580 CPU as an EtherNet/IP Adapter	255
8.11	Hardware Catalog	268
8.12	M580 CPU Embedded Web Pages	277

# Section 8.1

## Unity Pro Projects

---

### Overview

Use this section to add an M580 CPU to your Unity Pro application.

**NOTE:** For detailed information about using Unity Pro, refer to the online help and documentation DVD that come with Unity Pro.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Creating a Project in Unity Pro	145
Configuring the Size and Location of Inputs and Outputs	147
Project Management	148



## Creating a Project in Unity Pro

### Introduction

If you have not created a project in Unity Pro and installed a power supply and an M580 CPU, use the following steps to create a new Unity Pro project containing these components:

- M580 CPU ([see page 17](#))
- power supply ([see page 77](#))

### Creating and Saving a Unity Pro Project

Follow these steps to create a Unity Pro project:

Step	Action
1	Open Unity Pro.
2	Click <b>File</b> → <b>New...</b> to open the <b>New Project</b> window.
3	In the <b>PLC</b> window, expand the <b>Modicon M580</b> node, and select a CPU. <b>NOTE:</b> Refer to the CPU Scanner Service ( <a href="#">see page 21</a> ) topic to select the appropriate CPU, depending upon your DIO and RIO needs. In the <b>Rack</b> window, expand the <b>Modicon M580 local drop</b> node, and select a rack.
4	Click <b>OK</b> . <b>Result:</b> The <b>Project Browser</b> dialog opens.
5	Click <b>File</b> → <b>Save</b> to open the <b>Save As</b> dialog.
6	Enter a <b>File name</b> for your Unity Pro project and click <b>Save</b> . <b>Result:</b> Unity Pro saves your project to the specified path location.

### Changing the Default Storage Location (Optional)

You can change the default location that Unity Pro uses to store project files before you click **Save**:

Step	Action
1	Click <b>Tools</b> → <b>Options</b> to open the <b>Options Management</b> window.
2	In the left pane, navigate to <b>Options</b> → <b>General</b> → <b>Paths</b> .
3	In the right pane, type in a new path location for the <b>Project path</b> . You can also edit these items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Import/Export file path</b></li> <li>• <b>XVM path</b></li> <li>• <b>Project settings templates path</b></li> </ul>
4	Click <b>OK</b> to close the window and save your changes.

## Selecting a Power Supply

A default power supply is automatically added to the rack in a new Unity Pro project. To use a different power supply, follow these steps:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Project Browser</b> , double-click <b>PLC Bus</b> to display a graphical representation of the hardware rack: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The selected M580 CPU is in the second position.</li><li>• A default power supply appears in the first position.</li><li>• Unity Pro automatically opens the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> that corresponds to the <b>PLC bus</b> tab.</li></ul>
2	Select the power supply automatically added to the <b>PLC bus</b> .
3	Press the <b>Delete</b> key to remove the power supply.
4	Double-click the first slot of the <b>PLC bus</b> to open the <b>New Device</b> list.
5	Double-click the preferred power supply to make it appear in the <b>PLC bus</b> .
6	<b>File</b> → <b>Save</b> Click to save your project.


## Configuring the Size and Location of Inputs and Outputs

### Introduction

Use the following steps to configure the size and starting positions of inputs and outputs. Your own project configuration may differ.

### Setting Global Addresses and Operating Mode Parameters

Edit the communication module inputs and outputs:

Step	Action
1	Double-click the left mouse button on the image of the M580 CPU in the <b>PLC Bus</b> to view its properties.
2	Select the <b>Configuration</b> tab.
3	You can check the <b>Operating mode</b> boxes to enable these parameters in your application: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Run/Stop input</b> (default: <b>Not Selected</b>)</li> <li>● <b>Memory protect</b> (default: <b>Not Selected</b>)</li> <li>● <b>Automatic start in Run</b> (default: <b>Not Selected</b>)</li> <li>● <b>Initialize %MWi on cold start</b> (default: <b>Selected</b>)</li> <li>● <b>Cold Start Only</b> (default: <b>Not Selected</b>)</li> </ul>
4	Select the size of the global addresses: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>%M</b> (maximum value: 32,634)</li> <li>● <b>%MW</b> (maximum value: 65,232)</li> <li>● <b>%KW</b> (maximum value: 32,760)</li> <li>● <b>%S</b> (maximum value: 128)</li> <li>● <b>%SW</b> (maximum value: 168)</li> </ul>
5	Select the <b>Online modification in RUN or STOP</b> check box (in the <b>Configuration Online Modification</b> field) to use the change configuration on the fly (CCOTF) feature.
6	Select <b>Edit</b> → <b>Validate</b> (or click the  toolbar button) to save the configuration.

**NOTE:** After you validate module settings for the first time, you cannot edit the module name. If you subsequently decide to change the module name, delete the existing module from the configuration, then add and rename a replacement module.

### Completing the Ethernet Network Configuration

After you configure these settings, configure the CPU settings beginning with its Channel Properties. Then configure the Ethernet network devices.

# Project Management

## Downloading the Application to the CPU

Download the Unity Pro application to the CPU through one of its ports or through a connection to an Ethernet communication module:

Method	Connection
USB port	If the CPU and the PC that are running Unity Pro both have USB ports, you can download the application to the CPU directly through the USB ports ( <i>see page 35</i> ) (version 1.1 or later).
Ethernet port	If the CPU and the PC that are running Unity Pro both have Ethernet ports, you can download the application to the CPU directly through the Ethernet ports. (Confirm that the PC and the CPU are on the same network.)
communication module	You can download the application to the CPU by connecting Unity Pro to the IP address of the communication module.

**NOTE:** Refer to the *Downloading CPU Applications* topic in the *Modicon M580 System Planning Guide* for details.

## Converting Legacy Applications to M580

For details on this conversion process, contact your Schneider Electric customer support.

## Restoring and Backing Up Projects

The CPU application RAM (*see page 300*) and the CPU flash memory automatically and manually perform the following:

- restore a project in the CPU from the flash memory (and the memory card if inserted):
  - automatically after a power cycle
  - automatically on a warm restart
  - automatically on a cold start
  - manually with a Unity Pro command: **PLC →Project Backup →Backup Restore**

**NOTE:** If a memory card is inserted with a different application than the application in the CPU, the application is transferred from the memory card to the CPU application RAM when the restore function is carried out.

- save the CPU project in the flash memory (and the memory card if inserted):
  - automatically after an online modification is performed in the application RAM
  - automatically after a download
  - automatically on detection of %S66 system bit rising edge
  - manually with a Unity Pro command: **PLC →Project Backup →Backup Save**
- compare the CPU project and the flash memory project:
  - manually with a Unity Pro command: **PLC →Project Backup →Backup Compare**

**NOTE:**

When a valid memory card is inserted ([see page 42](#)) with a valid application, the application backup and restore operations are performed as follows:

- The application backup is performed on the memory card first and then on the flash memory.
- The application restore is performed from the memory card to the CPU application RAM first and then copied from the application RAM to the flash memory.

# Section 8.2

## Configuring the CPU with Unity Pro

---

### Introduction

Use the instructions in this section to configure the M580 CPU in Unity Pro.

**NOTE:** Some configuration features for the M580 CPU are accessed through the Unity Pro **DTM Browser**. Those configuration instructions appear elsewhere in this document (*see page 184*).

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Unity Pro Configuration Tabs	151
About Unity Pro Configuration	152
<b>Security</b> Tab	153
<b>IPConfig</b> Tab	156
RSTP Tab	157
<b>SNMP</b> Tab	159
<b>NTP</b> Tab	161
<b>Switch</b> Tab	163
<b>QoS</b> Tab	164
<b>Service Port</b> Tab	165
<b>Advanced Settings</b> Tab	166

## Unity Pro Configuration Tabs

### Accessing the Unity Pro Configuration Tabs

To access the CPU configuration parameters for RIO and distributed equipment:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Project Browser</b> , double-click <b>Project</b> → <b>Configuration</b> → <b>PLC bus</b> .
2	In the <b>PLC bus</b> dialog box, double-click the drawing with 3 Ethernet ports in the middle of the CPU.
3	In the <b>Security</b> tab, check to see that the services that you require are enabled ( <i>see page 154</i> ). (See the Note below.)
4	In the <b>IPConfig</b> tab, you may change the IP address of the CPU or you may leave it set to the default address.

**NOTE:** For improved security, some of the communication services (FTP, TFTP, and HTTP) are disabled by default. You may wish to perform some actions (such as a firmware update, web access, or remote I/O) that require the availability of one or more of these services. Before configuring Ethernet parameters, set the security levels (*see page 153*) to meet your requirements. When these services are not needed, you should disable them.

### Unity Pro Configuration Tabs

This table indicates the available Unity Pro configuration tabs for the M580 CPUs:

Unity Pro Tab	Services for CPUs with Embedded RIO Scanning (CPUs with commercial references ending in 40)	Services for CPUs without Embedded RIO Scanning (CPUs with commercial references ending in 20)
<b>Security</b>	X	X
<b>IPConfig</b>	X	X
<b>RSTP</b>	X	X
<b>SNMP</b>	X	X
<b>NTP</b>	X	X
<b>Switch</b>	–	X
<b>QoS</b>	–	X
<b>Service Port</b>	X	X
<b>Advanced Settings</b>	–	X
<b>X</b> yes <b>–</b> no		

# About Unity Pro Configuration

## Accessing Configuration Settings

Follow these steps to access the configuration settings for the M580 CPU in Unity Pro:

Step	Action
1	Open Unity Pro.
2	Open a Unity Pro project that includes a M580 CPU in the configuration.
3	Click ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>Project Browser</b> ).
4	Double-click <b>PLC bus</b> in the <b>Project Browser</b> .
5	<div>In the virtual rack, double-click the Ethernet ports of the M580 CPU to see these configuration tabs:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>Security</b></li><li>● <b>IpConfig</b></li><li>● <b>RSTP</b></li><li>● <b>SNMP</b></li><li>● <b>NTP</b></li><li>● <b>Switch</b> (not available in CPUs with RIO Ethernet scanner services)</li><li>● <b>QoS</b>(not available in CPUs with RIO Ethernet scanner services)</li><li>● <b>Service Port</b></li><li>● <b>Advanced Settings</b></li></ul></div> <div>These configuration tabs are described in detail in the following pages.</div>



## Security Tab

### Introduction

The Unity Pro DTM provides security services to the CPU. Enable and disable those services on the **Security** page in the Unity Pro DTM.

### Open the Page

View the **Security** configuration options:

Step	Action
1	Open your Unity Pro project.
2	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
3	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , double-click the CPU DTM to open the configuration window. <b>NOTE:</b> You can also right-click the CPU DTM and select <b>Open</b> .
4	Select <b>Security</b> in the navigation tree to view the configuration options.

**NOTE:** For detailed information, refer to the *Cyber Security* chapter in the *Modicon M580 System Planning Guide*.

### Available Ethernet Services

You can enable/disable the following Ethernet services using the **Security** tab in Unity Pro:

Field	Parameter	Value	Comment
FTP	—	Disabled (default)	Disables firmware upgrade, SD memory card data remote access, data storage remote access, and device configuration management using the FDR service. <b>NOTE:</b> Data storage is operational.
		Enabled	—
TFTP	—	Disabled (default)	Disables the ability to read RIO drop configuration and device configuration management using the FDR service. <b>NOTE:</b> You need to enable this service in order to use eX80 Ethernet adapter modules.
		Enabled	—
HTTP	—	Disabled (default)	Disables the web access service.
		Enabled	—
1. You can be modify this field when you set <b>Access Control</b> to <b>Enabled</b> .			

Field	Parameter	Value	Comment
Access Control	–	Enabled (default)	Denies Ethernet access to the Modbus and EtherNet/IP server from unauthorized network devices.
		Disabled	–
Enforce Security and Unlock Security	–	–	See the following paragraph for details.
Authorized addresses <sup>(1.)</sup>	IP Address	0.0.0.0 ... 255.255.255.255	See the following paragraph for details.
	Subnet	Yes/No	
	Subnet mask	0.0.0.0 ... 255.255.255.255	
1. You can be modify this field when you set <b>Access Control</b> to <b>Enabled</b> .			

Schneider Electric recommends disabling services that are not being used.

**NOTE:** Set the **Security** tab parameters before you download the application to the CPU. The default settings (maximum security level) reduce the communication capacities and port access.

### Enforce Security and Unlock Security Fields

- When you click **Enforce Security** (the **Security** tab default setting):  
**FTP**, **TFTP**, and **HTTP** are disabled and **Access Control** is enabled.
- When you click **Unlock Security**:  
**FTP**, **TFTP**, and **HTTP** are enabled, and **Access Control** is disabled.

**NOTE:** You can set each field individually once the global setting is applied.

### Using Access Control for Authorized Addresses

Use the **Access Control** page to restrict device access to the CPU in its role as either a Modbus TCP or EtherNet/IP server. When access control is enabled in the Services page, add the IP addresses of these devices to the list of **Authorized Addresses** to permit communication with that device:

- By default, the IP address of the CPU's embedded scanner service with **Subnet** set to **Yes** allows any device in the subnet to communicate with the CPU's scanner service using EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP.
- Add the IP address of any client device that may send a request to the CPU's scanner service, which, in this case, acts as a Modbus TCP or EtherNet/IP server.
- Add the IP address of your maintenance PC to communicate with the PAC through the CPU's scanner service via Unity Pro to configure and diagnose your application.

When access control is disabled in the **Services** page, the CPU's scanner service accepts Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP requests from any device.

Add devices to the **Authorized Addresses** list:

Step	Action
1	Set <b>Access Control</b> to <b>Enabled</b> .
2	In the <b>IP Address</b> column of the <b>Authorized Addresses</b> list, double-click the default IP address (0.0.0.0) to enter an IP address.
3	<p>Enter the address of the device to access the CPU's scanner service with either of these methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <i>Add a single IP address:</i> Enter the IP address of the device and select <b>No</b> in the <b>Subnet</b> column.</li> <li>● <i>Add a subnet:</i> Enter a subnet address in the <b>IP Address</b> column. Select <b>Yes</b> in the <b>Subnet</b> column. Enter a subnet mask in the <b>Subnet Mask</b> column.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The subnet in the <b>IP Address</b> column can be the subnet itself or any IP address in the subnet. If you enter a subnet without a subnet mask, an on-screen message states that the screen cannot be validated.</li> <li>● A red exclamation point (!) indicates a detected error in the entry. You can save the configuration only after the detected error is addressed.</li> </ul>
4	<p>Repeat these steps for each additional device or subnet to which you want to grant access to the CPU's scanner service.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You can enter up to 128 authorized IP addresses or subnets.</p>
5	Click <b>Apply</b> .

Remove devices from the **Authorized Addresses** list:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Authorized Addresses</b> list, select the IP address of the device to delete.
2	Set the IP address to 0.0.0.0.
3	Select <b>No</b> in the <b>Subnet</b> column.
4	Click <b>Apply</b> .

## IPConfig Tab

### IPConfig Parameters

IP address configuration field on the **IP Config** tab:

Parameter	Default Value	Description
<b>Main IP address</b>	192.168.10.1	the IP address of the CPU
<b>IP address A</b>	192.168.11.1	the IP address of the EIO scanner service  <b>NOTE:</b> If you change <b>IP address A</b> , the system may recalculate all IP addresses (including those of the drops) to keep all devices in the same subnetwork.
<b>IP address B</b>	—	used for Hot Standby
<b>Subnetwork mask</b>	255.255.0.0	This bit mask identifies or determines the IP address bits that correspond to the network address and the subnetwork portion of the address. (The value can be changed to any valid value in the subnetwork.)
<b>Gateway address</b>	192.168.10.1	This is the IP address of the default gateway to which messages for other networks are transmitted.

The **CRA IP address configuration** field on the **IPConfig** tab is provided for CPUs with embedded RIO scanning capabilities (CPUs with commercial references that end 40):

Parameter	Description
<b>Drop N°</b>	drop number
<b>Device Name</b>	device name (for the (e)X80 EIO adapter module)
<b>IP Address</b>	When an RIO drop is added, the adapter module is automatically assigned an IP address. (You can change this IP address in the <b>IP Address</b> column, but we recommend that you accept the automatically assigned IP address.)

## RSTP Tab

### Introduction

The Ethernet DEVICE NETWORK ports on the front of the M580 CPU support *rapid spanning tree protocol* (RSTP). RSTP is an OSI layer 2 protocol defined by IEEE 802.1D 2004. RSTP performs these services:

- RSTP creates a loop-free logical network path for Ethernet devices that are part of a topology that includes redundant physical paths. When either DEVICE NETWORK port (ETH 2 or ETH 3) on the CPU is disconnected, the RSTP service directs traffic to the other port.
- RSTP automatically restores network communication by activating redundant links when a network event causes a loss of service.

**NOTE:** When an RSTP link is connected, the RSTP service acts on an event and forwards traffic through the correct port. During this re-connect time (50ms max), some packets may be lost.

The RSTP service creates a loop-free logical network path for Ethernet devices that are part of a topology that includes redundant physical paths. When the network experiences a loss of service, the RSTP-enabled module automatically restores network communication by activating redundant links.

**NOTE:** RSTP can be implemented only when all network switches are configured to support RSTP.

Changing these parameters can affect sub-ring diagnostics, RIO determinism, and network recovery times.

### Assign the Bridge Priority for RIO/DIO Scanner Service

A **bridge priority** value is used to establish the relative position of a switch in the RSTP hierarchy. Bridge priority is a 2-byte value for the switch. The valid range is 0 ... 65535, with a default of 32768 (the midpoint).

Follow these steps to assign the **Bridge Priority** on the **RSTP** page:

Step	Action
1	Select <b>RSTP</b> to see the <b>RSTP Operational State</b> .
2	Select a <b>Bridge Priority</b> from the drop-down list in the <b>RSTP Operational State</b> area: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Root (0)</b></li> <li>• <b>Backup Root (4096)</b></li> <li>• <b>Participant (32768)</b> (default)</li> </ul>
3	Finish the configuration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>OK:</b> Assign the <b>Bridge Priority</b>, and close the window.</li> <li>• <b>Apply:</b> Assign the <b>Bridge Priority</b>, and keep the window open.</li> </ul>

**RSTP Parameters for CPUs with RIO and DIO Scanner Service**

RSTP tab:

Field	Parameter	Value	Comment
RSTP Operational State	Bridge Priority	Root (0)	default
		Backup Root (4096)	–
		Participant (32768)	–

**RSTP Parameters for CPUs without RIO Scanner Service (DIO Scanner Service Only)**

RSTP tab:

Field	Parameter	Value	Comment
RSTP Operational State	Bridge Priority	Root(0)	–
		Backup Root(4096)	–
		Participant(32768)	default
Bridge parameters	Force version	2	You cannot edit this value.
	Forward delay (ms)	21000	
	Maximum Age Time (ms)	40000	
	Transmit Hold Count	40	
	Hello Time (ms)	2000	
Port 3 Parameters	–	–	You cannot edit these field parameters.
Port 4 Parameters	–	–	You cannot edit these field parameters.

## SNMP Tab

### Introduction

Use the **SNMP** tab in Unity Pro to configure SNMP parameters for the M580 CPU service port main IP address.

An SNMP v1 agent is a software component of the SNMP service that runs on these modules to allow access to diagnostic and management information for the modules. You can use SNMP browsers, network management software, and other tools to access this data. In addition, the SNMP agent can be configured with the IP addresses of 1 or 2 devices (typically PCs that run network management software) to be the targets of event-driven trap messages. Such messages inform the management device of events like cold starts and the inability of the software to authenticate a device.

Use the **SNMP** tab to configure the SNMP agents for communication modules in the local rack and RIO drops. The SNMP agent can connect to and communicate with 1 or 2 SNMP managers as part of an SNMP service. The SNMP service includes:

- authentication checking by the Ethernet communication module, of any SNMP manager that sends SNMP requests
- management of events or traps

**NOTE:** IP address A does not support SNMP requests.

### SNMP Parameters

These parameters are found on the Unity Pro **SNMP** tab:

Field	Parameter	Value	Description
IP address managers	IP address manager1	0.0.0.0 ... 223.255.255.254	The address of the first SNMP manager to which the SNMP agent sends notices of traps.
	IP address manager 2		The address of the second SNMP manager to which the SNMP agent sends notices of traps.
Agent	Location (SysLocation)	32 characters (maximum)	device location
	Contact (SysContact)		description of the person to contact for device maintenance
	Enable SNMP Manager	check box selected or deselected	check box deselected (default): You can edit the <b>Location</b> and <b>Contact</b> parameters. check box selected: You cannot edit the <b>Location</b> and <b>Contact</b> parameters.
Community names	Set	16 characters (maximum)	password that the SNMP agent requires to read commands from an SNMP manager
	Get		
	Trap		

Field	Parameter	Value	Description
Security	Enable “Authentication failure” trap	check box selected or deselected	check box deselected (default): not enabled check box selected: The SNMP agent sends a trap notification to the SNMP manager if an unauthorized manager sends a <b>Get</b> or <b>Set</b> command to the agent.



## NTP Tab

### Introduction

When the PAC is configured as an NTP client, the network time service (SNTP) synchronizes the clock in the M580 CPU to that of the time server. The synchronized value is used to update the clock in the CPU. Typical time service configurations utilize redundant servers and diverse network paths to achieve high accuracy and reliability.

When the PAC is configured as an NTP server, it can synchronize client clocks (such as a BM• CRA 312 00 (e)X80 EIO adapter module). The CPU's internal clock is then used as reference clock for NTP services. When only BM• CRA 312 00 (e)X80 EIO adapter modules are configured as NTP clients, the accuracy of this server allows time discrimination of 20 ms.

**NOTE:** Refer to the *Modicon M580 Remote I/O Installation and Configuration Guide* for detailed information about timestamping performance.

These are some features of the time synchronization service:

- periodic time correction obtained from the reference-standard time server
- automatic switchover to a backup (secondary) time server if an error is detected with the normal time server system
- controller projects use a function block to read the accurate clock, allowing project events or variables to be time stamped

### NTP Parameters for a CPU

NTP tab:

Field	Parameter	Value	Comment
<b>NTP</b>	—	<b>Disabled</b>	default: Both the NTP server and the NTP client services of the PAC are disabled.
		<b>NTP Client</b>	The PAC functions as the NTP client, and the <b>NTP Server Configuration</b> parameters need to be configured.
		<b>NTP Server</b>	The EIO scanner service acts as an NTP server.
<b>NTP Server Configuration</b>	<b>Primary NTP Server IP address</b>		the IP address of the NTP server, from which the PAC first requests a time value
	<b>Secondary NTP Server IP address</b>	0.0.0.0	the IP address of the backup NTP server, from which the PAC requests a time value after not receiving a response from the primary NTP server
	<b>Polling Period</b>	20	The time (in seconds) between updates from the NTP server. Smaller values typically result in better accuracy.

### NTP Client Mode

To establish the accurate Ethernet system network time, the system performs the following at power up:

- requires the CPU to boot
- uses the CPU to obtain the time from the NTP server
- requires a predefined interval until time is accurate; your configuration determines how long before time is accurate
- may require several updates to achieve peak accuracy

Once an accurate time is received, the service sets the status in the associated time service register.

The time service clock value starts at 0 until fully updated from the CPU.

Model	Starting Date
Modicon M580 with Unity Pro	January 1st 1980 00:00:00.00

Stop or run PAC:

- Stop and run have no effect on the accuracy of the clock.
- Stop and run have no effect on the update of the clock.
- A transition from one mode to the other has no effect on the accuracy of the Ethernet system network time.

Download application:

- The status clock value associated with the time service register in the M580 CPU is reinitialized after an application is downloaded or after an NTP server swap. The time is accurate after 2 polling periods.

## Switch Tab

### Description

The **Switch** tab is only available for CPUs without RIO scanner service.

**Switch** tab:

Field	Parameter	Value	Comment
ETH1	—	—	You cannot edit these field parameters here. Configuration can be modified in the <b>Service Port</b> tab ( <a href="#">see page 165</a> ).
ETH2	Enabled	Yes	default
		No	—
	Baud Rate	Auto 10/100 Mbits/sec	default
		100 Mbits/sec Half duplex	—
		100 Mbits/sec Full duplex	—
		10 Mbits/sec Half duplex	—
		10 Mbits/sec Full duplex	—
ETH3	Enabled	Yes	default
		No	—
	Baud Rate	Auto 10/100 Mbits/sec	default
		100 Mbits/sec Half duplex	—
		100 Mbits/sec Full duplex	—
		10 Mbits/sec Half duplex	—
		10 Mbits/sec Full duplex	—
Backplane	—	—	You cannot edit these field parameters.

**NOTE:** **ETH1** port is a dedicated service port and the Ethernet backplane network is dedicated to the communication between modules on the rack. The switch parameters for those 2 ports cannot be configured in the **Switch** tab.

# QoS Tab

## Description

The M580 CPU can be configured to perform Ethernet packet tagging. The CPU supports the OSI layer 3 quality of service (QoS) standard defined in RFC-2475. When you enable QoS, the CPU adds a *differentiated services code point* (DSCP) tag to each Ethernet packet that it transmits to indicate the priority of that packet.

## QoS Tab

The **QoS** tab is available only on CPUs that do not support the RIO scanner service (only on CPUs with commercial references that end with 20).

Field	Parameter	Value	Comment
<b>DSCP Tagging</b>	–	<b>Enabled</b>	default
		<b>Disabled</b>	–
<b>PTP</b>	<b>DSCP PTP Event Priority</b>	59	–
	<b>DSCP PTP General Priority</b>	47	–
<b>EtherNet/IP Traffic</b>	<b>DSCP Value For I/O Data Schedule Priority Messages</b>	47	–
	<b>DSCP Value For Explicit Message</b>	27	–
	<b>DSCP Value For I/O Data Urgent Priority Messages</b>	55	–
	<b>DSCP Value For I/O Data High Priority Messages</b>	43	–
	<b>DSCP Value For I/O Data Low Priority Messages</b>	31	–
<b>Modbus TCP Traffic</b>	<b>DSCP Value For I/O Messages</b>	43	–
	<b>DSCP Value For Explicit Message</b>	27	–
<b>Network Time Protocol Traffic</b>	<b>DSCP Value For Network Time Protocol Messages</b>	59	–

DSCP tagging lets you prioritize the Ethernet packet streams based on the type of traffic in that stream.

To implement QoS settings in your Ethernet network:

- Use network switches that support QoS.
- Consistently apply DSCP values to network devices and switches that support DSCP.
- Confirm that switches apply a consistent set of rules for sorting DSCP tags, when transmitting and receiving Ethernet packets.

## Service Port Tab

### Service Port Parameters

These parameters are on the Unity Pro **Service Port** tab:

Field	Parameter	Value	Comment
<b>Service Port</b>	–	<b>Enabled</b>	Default - enable port and edit port parameters.
	–	<b>Disabled</b>	Disable port (no access to parameters).
<b>Service Port Mode</b>	–	<b>Access</b>	Default - this mode supports Ethernet communications.
	–	<b>Mirroring</b>	In port mirroring mode, data traffic from one or more of the other ports is copied to this port. A connected tool can monitor and analyze port traffic.  <b>NOTE:</b> In this mode, the <b>Service</b> port acts like a read-only port. That is, you cannot access devices (ping, connection to Unity Pro, and so on) through the <b>Service</b> port.
<b>Access Port Configuration</b>	<b>Service Port Number</b>	<b>ETH1</b>	You cannot edit the value in the <b>Service Port Number</b> field.
<b>Port Mirroring Configuration</b>	<b>Source Port(s)</b>	<b>Internal Port</b>	Ethernet traffic to and from the module sent to the Service Port
		<b>ETH2</b>	Ethernet traffic to and from ETH2 sent to Service Port
		<b>ETH3</b>	Ethernet traffic to and from ETH3 sent to Service Port
		<b>Backplane Port</b>	Ethernet traffic to and from the backplane sent to the Service Port

### On-line Behavior

The **Service Port** parameters are stored in the application, but you can reconfigure (change) the parameters in connected mode. Values that you reconfigure in connected mode are sent to the PAC in explicit messages.

The changed values are not stored, so a mismatch can exist between the parameters that are being used and those that are in the stored application.

# Advanced Settings Tab

## Introduction

The **Advanced Settings** tab is only available for CPUs that do not support RIO scanning (DIO scanner service only). The **Advanced Settings** contains these fields:

- **EtherNet/IP Timeout Settings**
- **EtherNet/IP Scanner Behavior**

## Timeout Settings

These parameters are in the **EtherNet/IP Timeout Settings** field:

Parameter	Value	Comment
<b>FW_Open I/O Connection Timeout</b> (msec)	4960	Specifies the amount of time the scanner waits for FW_Open response of an I/O connection.
<b>FW_Open EM Connection Timeout</b> (msec)	3000	Specifies the amount of time the scanner waits for FW_Open response of an EM connection.
<b>EM Connection RPI</b> (msec)	10000	Sets T->O and O->T RPI for all EM connections.
<b>EM Request Timeout</b> (sec)	10	Specifies the amount of time the scanner will wait between the request and the response of an explicit message.

## Scanner Behavior

These parameters are in the **EtherNet/IP Scanner Behavior** field:

Parameter	Value	Comment
<b>Allow RESET via explicit message</b>	<b>Disabled</b>	(Default.) The scanner ignores the Identity object reset service request.
	<b>Enabled</b>	The scanner will reset if an Identity object reset service request is received.
<b>Behavior when CPU state is STOP</b>	<b>Idle</b>	(Default.) The EtherNet/IP I/O connection stays open, but the <b>Run/Idle</b> flag is set to Idle.
	<b>STOP</b>	The EtherNet/IP IO connection is closed.

---

## Section 8.3

### The Unity Pro FDT/DTM Interface

---

#### Overview

The section describes the use of DTMs within Unity Pro.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
About the Unity Pro <b>DTM Browser</b>	<a href="#">168</a>
<b>DTM Browser</b> Menu Commands	<a href="#">171</a>
Managing DTM Connections	<a href="#">175</a>
Field Bus Discovery Service	<a href="#">176</a>
Configuring DTM Properties	<a href="#">180</a>
Uploading and Downloading DTM-Based Applications	<a href="#">182</a>

# About the Unity Pro DTM Browser

## Introduction to FDT/DTM

Unity Pro incorporates the Field Device Tool (FDT) / Device Type Manager (DTM) approach to integrate distributed devices with your process control application. Unity Pro includes an FDT container that interfaces with the DTMs of EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP devices.

An EtherNet/IP device or Modbus TCP device is defined by a collection of properties in its DTM. For each device in your configuration, add the corresponding DTM to the Unity Pro **DTM Browser**. From the **DTM Browser**, you can open the device properties dialog and configure the parameters presented by the DTM.

Device manufacturers may provide a DTM for each of its EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP devices. However, if you use an EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP device that has no DTM, configure the device with one of these methods:

- Configure a generic DTM that is provided in Unity Pro.
- Import the EDS file for the device. Unity Pro populates the DTM parameters based on the content of the imported EDS file.

**NOTE:** The DTM for a CPU is automatically added to the **DTM Browser** when you select a PLC for your Unity Pro project..

## Open the DTM Browser

View the configuration options for the CPU in the Unity Pro **DTM Browser**:

Step	Action
1	Open a Unity Pro project.
2	Open the Unity Pro <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
3	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , double-click the CPU DTM to open the configuration window.
4	View the DTM configuration parameters for the CPU in the open dialog: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>Channel Properties</b></li><li>● <b>Services</b></li><li>● <b>EtherNet/IP Local Slaves</b></li><li>● <b>Device List</b></li><li>● <b>Logging</b></li></ul>



## DTM Types

The **DTM Browser** displays a hierarchical list of DTM nodes on a connectivity tree. The DTM nodes that appear in the list that have been added to your Unity Pro project. Each node represents an actual module or device in your Ethernet network.

There are 2 kinds of DTMs:

- **master (communication) DTM:** This DTM is both a device DTM and a communication DTM. The master DTM is a pre-installed component of Unity Pro.
- **generic DTM:** The Unity Pro FDT container is the integration interface for any device's communication DTM.

## Node Types

View the DTM type:

Step	Action
1	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> in Unity Pro ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
2	Right-click the CPU DTM in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
3	Select <b>Properties</b> to open the DTM properties.
4	Click the <b>Device information</b> tab to see the DTM <b>Type</b> in the list of <b>Properties</b> .

This table describes the DTM node types shown in the **Type** description on the **Device Information** tab:

DTM	Description
communication	Communication DTMs appear under the root node (host PC). A communication DTM can support gateway DTMs or device DTMs as children if their protocols are compatible.
gateway	A gateway DTM supports other gateway DTMs or device DTMs as children if their protocols are compatible.
device	A device DTM does not support any child DTM.

## Node Names

Each DTM node has a default name when it is inserted into the **DTM Browser**. The default name for gateway and device DTMs has the following format: <protocol: address> device name. **For example:** <EtherNet IP: 192.168.10.1 > BMEP58\_ECPU

Element	Description
channel	This is the name of the channel communication medium into which the device is plugged. This name is read from the DTM, and is set by the device vendor. <b>Example:</b> EtherNet/IP, Modbus

Element	Description
address	This is the bus address of the device that defines the connection point on its parent gateway network. <b>Example:</b> the device IP address
device name	The default name is determined by the vendor in the device DTM, but you can edit the name.

## Node Status

The **DTM Browser** contains graphics to indicate the status of each DTM node in the connectivity tree:

Status	Description
Built / Not-built	A blue check mark is superimposed on a device icon to indicate that the node (or one of its sub-nodes) is not built. This means that some property of the node has changed, so the information stored in the physical device is no longer consistent with the local project.
Connected / Disconnected	A connected DTM appears in <b>bold</b> text. An unconnected DTM appears in plain text. <b>NOTE:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connecting a DTM to its physical device automatically connects higher level parent nodes to the root node.</li> <li>Disconnecting a DTM from its physical device automatically disconnects lower level child nodes.</li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> Connecting or disconnecting a DTM to or from its device does not also connect or disconnect Unity Pro to or from the device. DTMs can be connected/disconnected while Unity Pro is either offline or online.
Installed / Not-installed	A red X is superimposed on a device icon to indicate that the DTM for that device is not installed on the PC.

## Handling Invalid Nodes

As previously indicated, a red X superimposed on a node indicates the DTM for that node is not installed on the PC. To resolve this situation, right-click the node top to open a pop-up menu with these commands:

Command	Description
Delete	Removes the selected node (and its sub-nodes) from the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
Properties	Open the <b>Properties of ...</b> dialog box to identify the name of the missing DTM.

**NOTE:** After you install the DTM, reopen the Unity Pro application.

## DTM Browser Menu Commands

### Introduction

The Unity Pro **DTM Browser** includes these commands for the selected DTM associated with a module:

- universal commands (determined by the selected node level):
  - host PC node (level 1)
  - communication module node (level 2)
  - remote device node (level 3)
- device-specific commands (determined by the device DTM)

### Host PC Node Commands

Right-click **Host PC** to access these commands in the Unity Pro **DTM Browser**:

Name	Description
<b>Add...</b> <sup>1</sup>	Open the <b>Add</b> window (a subset of the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> ). Select a device DTM to add to the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
<b>Check DTM devices</b> <sup>1</sup>	Check the current project for invalid DTMs or DTMs that are not installed on the PC. If the results of the check include invalid or not-installed DTMs, they appear in the <b>User errors</b> tab in the information window and a red <b>X</b> is superimposed over their icons in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
<b>DTM services</b>	Display the communication DTMs and the device topology along with their respective IP addresses and connection states. For each device, you can connect, disconnect, load data from devices, or store data to devices. You can also choose to stop communications or continue an activity when errors are detected.
<b>DTM hardware catalog</b>	Display the <b>DTM catalog</b> tab in the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> .
<b>Expand all</b> <sup>2</sup>	Display and expand every DTM in the project in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
<b>Collapse all</b> <sup>2</sup>	Display only the communication DTMs in the project.
1. This command also appears in the <b>Edit</b> menu. 2. This command also appears in the <b>View</b> menu.	

### CPU Ethernet I/O Scanner Service DTM Commands

Right-click the CPU DTM in the **DTM Browser** and scroll to these commands:

Name	Description
<b>Open</b> <sup>1</sup>	View the configuration options for the CPU Ethernet I/O scanner service. <b>NOTE:</b> You can also double-click the CPU DTM in the <b>DTM Browser</b> to open this window.
1. This command also appears in the Unity Pro <b>Edit</b> menu. 2. This command also appears in the Unity Pro <b>View</b> menu.	

Name	Description
<b>Add</b> <sup>1</sup>	Open the <b>Add</b> dialog box to view a subset of available DTMs in the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> . <b>NOTE:</b> Unity Pro filters the content of the <b>Add</b> dialog to display only DTMs that are compatible with the selected DTM selected.
<b>Delete</b> <sup>1</sup>	If the selected DTM allows this function, this deletes the selected DTM and its sub-node DTMs from the DTM connectivity tree.
<b>Field Bus Discovery</b>	This scans the connected physical devices to create the corresponding field bus topology. Refer to the <i>Field Bus Discovery Service</i> topic (see page 176).
<b>Sort by Address</b>	Sort the DTMs according to their IP addresses.
<b>Connect</b> <sup>1</sup>	This connects the DTM to its physical device on the network. This connection does not depend on the PAC (see page 325) online/offline status of the Unity Pro project application. <b>NOTE:</b> Connecting a gateway or device DTM implicitly connects its parent DTM.
<b>Disconnect</b> <sup>1</sup>	This disconnects the DTM from its physical device. This disconnection depends on the PLC online/offline status of the Unity Pro project application. <b>NOTE:</b> Disconnecting a gateway or device DTM implicitly disconnects its parent DTM.
<b>Load data from device</b> <sup>1</sup>	This loads data from the physical device on the network to the DTM.
<b>Store data to device</b> <sup>1</sup>	This loads data from the DTM to the physical device on the network.
<b>Copy</b>	Copy the selected device DTM.
<b>Paste</b>	Paste the selected device DTM.
<b>Device menu</b>	This command opens a sub-menu that contains device-specific commands, as determined by the device vendor.
<b>Properties</b> <sup>1</sup>	Open the Ethernet communications module's <b>Properties</b> window.
<b>Print device</b> <sup>1</sup>	If this optional function is supported by a DTM, this function displays the device documentation (including configuration settings) in the PC's default Internet browser, which can then be printed. <b>NOTE:</b> Device information can be printed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• for only one device DTM at a time, when that DTM is not open for editing in the <b>Device Editor</b></li> <li>• only when the DTM is disconnected from the physical device</li> </ul>
<b>Zoom in</b> <sup>2</sup>	Make this selection to display only the selected module in the connectivity tree of the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
<b>Zoom out</b> <sup>2</sup>	This returns to the display of the entire DTM connectivity tree.
<b>Expand all</b> <sup>2</sup>	Display the DTMs below the selected DTM.
<b>Collapse all</b> <sup>2</sup>	Display only the selected DTM.
1. This command also appears in the Unity Pro <b>Edit</b> menu. 2. This command also appears in the Unity Pro <b>View</b> menu.	

## Device Menu Commands

When you select **Device menu** in the main contextual menu for the CPU DTM, a sub-menu displays that contains these commands:

Name		Description
<b>Offline Parameter</b>		This command is disabled.
<b>Online Parameter</b>		This command is disabled.
<b>Compare</b>		This compares 2 devices, either online or offline.
<b>Configuration</b>		This opens the <b>Device Editor</b> for the CPU Ethernet I/O scanner service, when the CPU and its DTM are disconnected.
<b>Observe</b>		This command is disabled.
<b>Diagnosis</b>		Open the <b>Diagnosis Window</b> for the CPU Ethernet I/O scanner service when the module and its DTM are connected.
<b>Additional functions</b>	<b>Add EDS to library</b>	Opens the <b>EDS File Wizard</b> , which you can use to add a device EDS file to the Unity Pro EDS device library. Unity Pro displays the contents of EDS files as DTMs for use in the <b>DTM Browser</b> and <b>Device Editor</b> .
	<b>Remove EDS from library</b>	Opens the <b>EDS Deletion from Device Library</b> window, which you can use to delete an EDS file from the device library.
	<b>Online Action</b>	Opens the <b>Online Action</b> window. Depending upon the protocol(s) a remote device supports, you can use the <b>Online Action</b> window to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ping a remote EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP device</li> <li>view and write to EtherNet/IP properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device</li> <li>view and write to port configuration properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device</li> </ul>
	<b>EtherNet/IP Explicit Message</b>	Opens the <b>EtherNet/IP Explicit Message</b> window, which you can use to send explicit messages to EtherNet/IP remote devices.
	<b>Modbus TCP Explicit Message</b>	Opens the <b>Modbus TCP Explicit Message</b> window, which you can use to send explicit messages to Modbus TCP remote devices.
	<b>About</b>	
	<b>Advanced Mode</b>	Displays or hides expert-level properties that help define Ethernet connections.

### Enabling Advanced Mode

Use the contextual menu in the **DTM Browser** to toggle Unity Pro in or out of **Advanced Mode**, thereby displaying or hiding expert-level properties that help define Ethernet connections. These properties are identified by this icon:



**NOTE:** To maintain system performance, confirm that the **Advanced Mode** properties are configured only by persons with a solid understanding of communication protocols.

To toggle the **Advanced Mode** (on/off):

Step	Action
1	Close configuration windows associated with the CPU.
2	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , right-click the CPU Ethernet I/O scanner service DTM.
3	Scroll to <b>Additional functions (Device menu →Additional functions)</b> to see the status of the <b>Advanced Mode</b> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <i>checked</i>: The <b>Advanced Mode</b> is enabled.</li><li>● <i>unchecked</i>: The <b>Advanced Mode</b> is disabled.</li></ul> <b>NOTE:</b> If configuration or properties windows that are associated with the CPU are open, the <b>Advanced Mode</b> is not available (greyed out).
4	Select <b>Advanced Mode</b> to toggle its status. For example, if <b>Advanced Mode</b> is checked (enabled), select it to disable it.

## Managing DTM Connections

### Introduction

Use these instructions to connect or disconnect a DTM to or from a physical device or module.

### Connecting and Disconnecting

Connect or disconnect a DTM and the associated device or module through the contextual pop-up menu in the Unity Pro **DTM Browser** as follows:

Step	Action
1	In the Unity Pro <b>DTM Browser</b> , locate the DTM to or from which you want to connect to or disconnect.
2	Click the right mouse button to view a pop-up menu.
3	<p>Select <b>Connect</b> or <b>Disconnect</b> from the pull-down menu (or access the <b>Connect</b> and <b>Disconnect</b> commands in the Unity Pro <b>Edit</b> menu):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Connect</b>: Perform these tasks with a connection: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Configure Ethernet communication modules, distributed devices, and their common Ethernet connections.</li> <li>● Monitor and diagnose the real-time operation of the device or module.</li> </ul> </li> <li>● <b>Disconnect</b>: Perform these tasks without a connection: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Configure an Ethernet communication module or distributed device by editing its properties.</li> <li>● A disconnected DTM appears in normal text (not <b>bold</b>). (The <b>Connect</b> command is available only for disconnected DTMs.)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

The **DTM Browser** indicates the relationship between the DTM and the remote module or device:

- A connected DTM appears in **bold** text. (The **Disconnect** command is available only for connected DTMs.)
- A disconnected DTM appears in regular (not **bold**) text. The **Connect** command is available only for disconnected DTMs.

To connect to the CPU DTM, set the **Source IP Address** in the channel properties configuration ([see page 186](#)) to the same network as the PAC.

# Field Bus Discovery Service

## Introduction

Use the field bus discovery service to detect and add to your Unity Pro application, network devices that are situated on a local network. The field bus discovery service is available only when the Ethernet communication module DTM is connected to its physical device.

Only the first level devices below the communication DTM are detected.

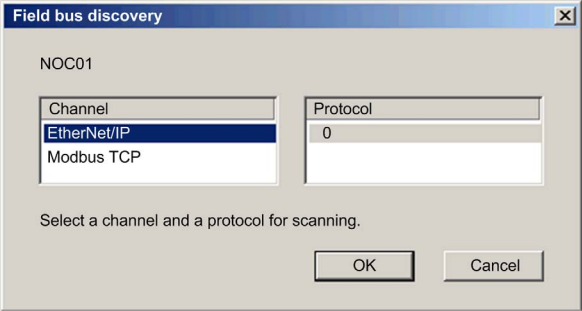
## Performing Field Bus Discovery

The results of the scanning process is compared to the registered DTMs in the DTM catalog of the computer. If a match is found in the DTM catalog for a scanned device, the results are accompanied with a matching type that gives the accuracy of the match.

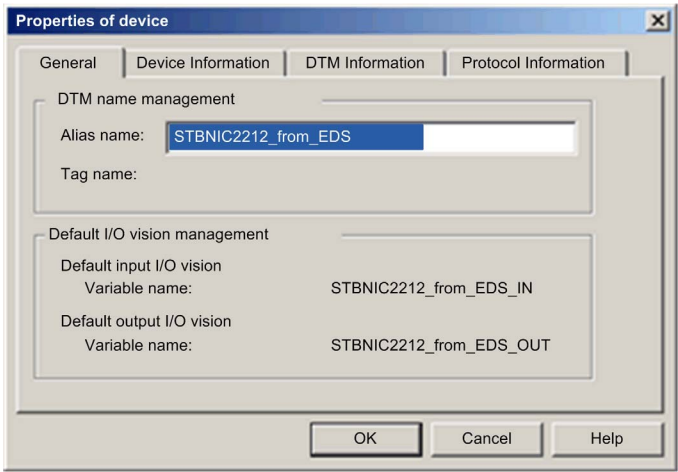
These are the available matching types:

- *Exact match*: Every identification attribute matches. The correct device type was found.
- *Generic match*: At least the **Vendor** and device **Type ID** attributes match. The support level of the DTM is "Generic Support."
- *Uncertain match*: At least the **Vendor** and device **Type ID** attributes match. The support level of the DTM is *not* "Generic Support."

Use the field bus discovery service:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select an appropriate DTM. <b>NOTE:</b> The field bus discovery service limits its search to the range of IP addresses that is pre-configured for the selected channel in the <b>Channel Properties</b> page.
2	Right-click the DTM and scroll to <b>Field bus discovery</b> to open the dialog box:  The image shows a 'Field bus discovery' dialog box. At the top, it says 'NOC01'. Below this, there are two lists. The 'Channel' list has 'EtherNet/IP' selected (highlighted in blue) and 'Modbus TCP' below it. The 'Protocol' list has '0' selected. Below the lists, it says 'Select a channel and a protocol for scanning.' At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.
3	Under these conditions, select a channel and a protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● The DTM has more than one channel.</li><li>● The channel supports more than one protocol.</li></ul>
4	Click on <b>OK</b> . The service starts to detect devices on the selected channel.



Step	Action
5	If at least one matched device has been found, the <b>Field Bus Discovery</b> dialog displays a list of <b>Scanned Devices</b> .
6	Use the controls of the <b>Field Bus Discovery</b> dialog to select the devices to add to your Unity Pro application.
7	After you have selected the devices you want to add in the <b>Field Bus Discovery</b> dialog, click <b>OK</b> .
8	If the field bus discovery process finds at least one device with an IP address that is already used in the project, you are asked if you want to continue and replace the existing project device(s): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Yes</b>: Proceed to the next step.</li> <li>● <b>No</b>: Cancel automatic field bus discovery.</li> </ul>
9	<p>The device properties dialog (below) opens, displaying the default name for the first discovered device to be added:</p>  <p>In the <b>General</b> page of the device properties dialog, type in the <b>Alias name</b> for the device to be added, then click <b>OK</b>. The dialog closes, then re-opens if there is another device to be added to the application.</p>
10	Repeat the above step for each additional discovered device.
11	<p>After you finish adding devices to the application, configure each device for operation as part of the application:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Disconnect the Ethernet communication module from its DTM. In the <b>DTM Browser</b>, select the Ethernet communication module, then select <b>Edit → Disconnect</b>.</li> <li>● Configure the new device properties in the DTMs for both the Ethernet communication module, and the newly added remote device.</li> </ul>

Field Bus Discovery Dialog

If at least one matched device has been found, the Field Bus Discovery dialog box is displayed listing the scanned and matched devices. Select the matched devices to be created in the Unity Pro project (which then shows up in the **Selected Devices** list:

Field bus discovery

NOC01 – Channel EtherNet/IP – Protocol 0

Scanned Devices:

Name	Address	Typeld	Vendor	Version	Serial
1734-AENT Ethernet IP Adapter	192.168.1.11	12-108	1	2.1	437850353
STB NIC 2212In19 Out6	192.168.1.6	12-2213	243	2.10	102498786

Matched Devices:

Name	Match	Type	Vendor	Version	Date
STB NIC 2212In19 Out6	Exact	device	Schneider Electric	2.10	2009-12-08

Selected Devices:

Name	Address	Match	Typeld	Vendor	Version	Date
STB NIC 2212In19 Out6	192.168.1.6	Exact	device	Schneider Electric	2.10	2009-12-08

Select the devices to be added in the project.

OKCancel




This dialog presents these lists:

List	Description
Scanned Devices	The devices (matched and unmatched) found during the scan.
Matched Devices	<p>The matched DTMs found in the workstation DTM catalog for the device that you selected in the <b>Scanned Devices</b> list.</p> <p>Each time a scanned device is selected in the <b>Scanned Devices</b> list, the contents of the <b>Matched Devices</b> list is updated to display the matched device DTMs found for the selected scanned device.</p> <p>The matching process can yield one or more matched devices for a given scanned device. In this case, only one DTM was discovered for the selected scanned device.</p>
Selected Devices	This list displays the device DTMs that have been selected in the <b>Matched Devices</b> list, which will be added to the Unity Pro project.

The lists use the following colored icons:

Color	Meaning
Green	The device has been selected.
Yellow	The device has been matched.
Red	The device has <b>not</b> been matched.
Black	Information about the address of the scanned device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the <b>Scanned Devices</b> list, the device has an address identical to one of the DTMs in the Unity Pro project</li> <li>● In the <b>Matched Devices</b> list, the device will be assigned an address identical to one of the DTMs in the Unity Pro project</li> </ul>
<p><b>NOTE:</b> An icon can consist of two colors. For example, a search can discover a device that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● has a matching DTM, and</li> <li>● has an IP address identical to a device already added to the Unity Pro application</li> </ul> <p>In this case, the icon next to the discovered device would be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● half yellow and half black before it is selected, and</li> <li>● half green and half black after it is selected</li> </ul>	

This dialog has five buttons:

Button	Use this button to...
Add All 	Automatically add the most closely matched (according to the matching types listed above) device DTM for each found device in the <b>Matched Devices</b> list to the <b>Selected Devices</b> list.
Add One 	Add the matched device DTM selected in the <b>Matched Devices</b> list.
Remove 	Remove one or more devices from the <b>Selected Devices</b> list.
OK	Insert the device DTMs in the <b>Selected Devices</b> list into the Unity Pro project. If there are one or more devices in the <b>Selected Devices</b> list that have the same address in the Unity Pro project, a message box opens asking if you want to continue. If you click <b>OK</b> , devices in the Unity Pro project that have identical addresses as the selected devices are <b>deleted</b> and <b>replaced</b> by the DTMs selected in the <b>Selected Devices</b> list.
Cancel	Cancel the field bus discovery scan and do nothing. Information in the three lists is discarded.

# Configuring DTM Properties

## Introduction




You can edit and view parameters in the **Device List** that is associated with the M580 DTM.

## Open the Device List

View the **Device List**:

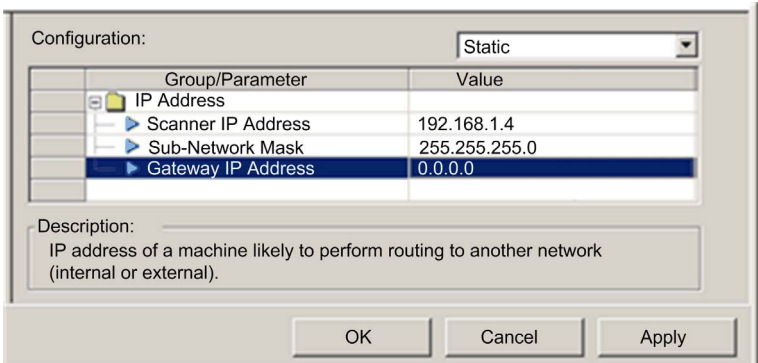
Step	Action
1	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> in Unity Pro ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
2	Double-click the M580 DTM in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
3	In the configuration tree associated with the M580 DTM, click <b>Device List</b> .

The **Device Editor** displays these icons next to the device properties:

Icon	Access	Description
	read-only	This property value cannot be edited on this page.
	read-write	This property value can be edited on this page.
	—	Expand (+) the folder icon to view associated properties.



## Displaying Property Definitions

When you select a property in the list, a description for that property often appears in the **Description** field:



## Configuring Properties

Configure the **Device Editor** properties:

Step	Action	
1	While you edit a parameter, Unity Pro displays an icon next to the field you are editing and in the navigation tree. These icons refer to value of the parameter that is being edited:	
2		The entered value is not valid. The <b>Apply</b> button does not work until a valid value is entered.
		This parameter has changed. The <b>Apply</b> button does not work until the value is corrected.
3	<p>Click one of these buttons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>Apply</b>: Save your changes and keep the page open.</li><li>● <b>OK</b>: Save your changes and close the page.</li><li>● <b>Cancel</b>: Cancel changes.</li></ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Your changes do not take effect until they are successfully downloaded from your PC to the CPU and from the CPU to the communication modules and network devices.</p>	

# Uploading and Downloading DTM-Based Applications

## Introduction

You can use Unity Pro to download an application file from your PC to the PAC, and to upload an application file from the PAC to your PC.

To perform a successful upload, confirm that the application file includes specific upload-related information as part of the application.

## Downloading DTM-Based Applications

Unity Pro applications that include DTM files require more memory than traditional Unity Pro applications. These products employ DTMs for network configuration:

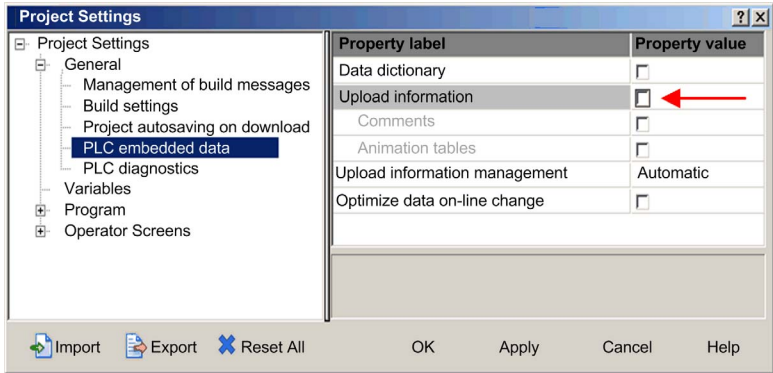
- 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet communication module for Quantum
- TSX ETC 101 Ethernet communication module for Premium
- BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module for M340
- 140 NOC 78• 00 Ethernet communication module for Quantum
- BME P58 ••• CPU for M580

In some cases, the configurations created for these modules (and the data associated with them) require more memory than is available in the CPU.

If the amount of memory required by an application exceeds the amount of memory that is available in the CPU, Unity Pro displays a message during the build process, before the application is downloaded to the PAC.

When this situation occurs, exclude the additional upload-related information from the application to complete the build and enable the application download. To do this, change the Unity Pro configuration:

Step	Action
1	In the main menu, select <b>Tools →Project Settings...</b> The <b>Project Settings</b> window opens.
2	In the left pane of the <b>Project Settings</b> window, select <b>General →PLC embedded data</b> .

Step	Action
3	<p>In the right pane, deselect the <b>Upload information</b> check box:</p> 
4	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes and close the <b>Project Settings</b> window.

After the **Upload information** setting is disabled, you can build the application and download it to the PAC.

**NOTE:** An application in which the **Upload information** setting has been disabled cannot later be uploaded from the PAC to the PC.

### Uploading DTM-Based Applications

DTM-based applications that were successfully downloaded to the CPU (with the project's **Upload information** setting enabled) can later be uploaded from the PAC to the PC if the target PC has these files installed:

- a version of Unity Pro that is equal to or later than the version used to create the application
- the DTMs for the modules included in the configuration
- the device DTMs for the DTM-based devices attached to the network (confirm that the DTMs are of the same or later revision as each device DTM used in the configuration)
- the device EDS files for any EtherNet/IP device used in the configuration (confirm that the EDS files are of the same or later revision as each device EDS file used in the configuration)

After the above components have been installed on the target PC, you can upload a DTM-based Unity Pro application from a PAC.

**NOTE:** Confirm that each of the above DTM components is installed on the target PC *before* attempting the upload.

# Section 8.4

## Configuring the M580 CPU with DTMs in Unity Pro

---

### Introduction

Some configuration features for the M580 CPU are accessed through its corresponding M580 DTM in the Unity Pro **DTM Browser**.

Use the instructions in this section to configure the M580 CPU through the DTM.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
About DTM Configuration in Unity Pro	185
Accessing Channel Properties	186
Configuring DHCP and FDR Address Servers	188



## About DTM Configuration in Unity Pro

### Introduction

The configuration of the M580 CPU through standard Unity Pro features is described elsewhere in this guide ([see page 150](#)).

Some configuration that is specific to a particular device (like the M580 CPU) is done through a corresponding device type manager (DTM) in Unity Pro. This section describes that configuration.

### Accessing Configuration Settings

Follow these steps to access the configuration settings in the DTM for the M580 CPU in Unity Pro:

Step	Action
1	Open Unity Pro.
2	Open a Unity Pro project that includes a M580 CPU in the configuration.
3	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
4	Double-click the DTM that corresponds to the M580 CPU in the <b>DTM Browser</b> to open the device editor of the DTM.
5	These headings appear in the configuration tree of the M580 DTM: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>Channel Properties</b></li><li>● <b>Services</b></li><li>● <b>EtherNet/IP Local Slaves</b></li><li>● <b>Device List</b></li><li>● <b>Logging</b></li></ul>

# Accessing Channel Properties

## Introduction

Use the **Channel Properties** page to perform these tasks:

- Select an IP address to connect a module or device DTM to physical devices.
- Select an IP address to send explicit messages to Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP devices.
- View the IP address settings of your PC.

## Open the Page

View the **Channel Properties** for the Ethernet communications module:

Step	Action
1	Open a Unity Pro project that includes a BME NOC 03•1 module.
2	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
3	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , find the name that you assigned to the BME NOC 03•1 module..
4	Double-click the name of the BME NOC 03•1 to open the configuration window. <b>NOTE:</b> You can also right-click the module and scroll to <b>Open</b> to view the configuration window.

## Property Descriptions

Select **Channel Properties** in the navigation tree to configure these properties:

Field	Parameter	Description
Source Address	Source IP Address	A list of IP addresses assigned to network interface cards installed on your PC. <b>NOTE:</b> If the configured main IP address of the CPU is not in the subnet of any of the IP configured on the interface cards of the PC, then the first interface card IP is suggested by default.
	Sub-Network Mask	The subnet mask that is associated with the selected source IP address.
EtherNet/IP Network Detection	Begin detection range address	The first IP address in the address range for automatic field bus discovery of EtherNet/IP devices.
	End detection range address	The last IP address in the address range for automatic field bus discovery of EtherNet/IP devices.
Modbus Network Detection	Begin detection range address	The first IP address in the address range for automatic field bus discovery of Modbus TCP devices.
	End detection range address	The last IP address in the address range for automatic field bus discovery of Modbus TCP devices.

### TCP/IP Monitoring

Expand (+) the **Channel Properties** heading in the configuration tree and select the **TCP/IP** item at level 1.

The read-only information on this page monitors the IP parameters that were configured in **Unity Pro**.

# Configuring DHCP and FDR Address Servers

## DHCP and FDR Address Servers

The M580 CPU includes both a dynamic host communication protocol (DHCP) and a fast device replacement (FDR) server. The DHCP server provides IP address settings to networked Ethernet devices. The FDR server provides operating parameter settings to replacement Ethernet devices that are equipped with FDR client functionality.

## Accessing the Address Server

Follow these steps to access the address server for the M580 CPU in Unity Pro:

Step	Action
1	Open Unity Pro.
2	Open a Unity Pro project that includes a M580 CPU in the configuration.
3	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
4	Double-click the DTM that corresponds to the M580 CPU in the <b>DTM Browser</b> to open the device editor of the DTM.
5	Expand (+) the <b>Services</b> heading in the configuration tree.
6	Select the <b>Address Server</b> item in the configuration tree to see the address server configuration.

## Configuration

Configure the address server to perform these tasks:

- Enable and disable the CPU FDR service.  
**NOTE:** The FDR service is available only in CPUs that do not support RIO scanning (CPUs with commercial references that end in 20).
- View an automatically generated list of all devices included in the CPU configuration, displaying for each device:
  - IP addressing parameters
  - whether the device IP addressing parameters are provided by the CPU embedded DHCP server

Manually add remote devices that are not part of the CPU configuration to the CPU DHCP client list.

**NOTE:** Remote devices added in this way are equipped with DHCP client software and are configured to subscribe to the CPU IP addressing service.

## Enabling the FDR Service

To enable the FDR service, set the **FDR Server** field to **Enabled**. To disable the service, toggle the same field to **Disabled**. Only CPUs that do not support RIO scanning (CPUs with commercial references that end in 20) can disable this service; that support RIO scanning (CPUs with commercial references that end in 40) always have this service enabled.

Any networked Ethernet device equipped with FDR client functionality can subscribe to the CPU FDR service. The CPU can store up to 1 MB of FDR client operating parameter files. When this file storage capacity is reached, the CPU cannot store any additional client FDR files.

The CPU can store FDR client files for up to 128 devices, depending on the size of each stored file. For example, if the size of each FDR client file is small – not more than 8 Kb – the CPU could store up to the maximum of 128 parameter files.

### Viewing the Auto-Generated DHCP Client List

The list of **Automatically Added Devices** includes a row for each remote device that is:

- part of the CPU configuration
- configured to subscribe to the CPU DHCP addressing service

**NOTE:** You cannot add devices to this list in this page. Instead, use the configuration pages for the remote device to subscribe to this service.

This table describes the available properties:

Property	Description
<b>Device No</b>	The number assigned to the device in the Unity Pro configuration.
<b>IP Address</b>	The client device IP address.
<b>DHCP</b>	TRUE indicates that the device subscribes to the DHCP service.
<b>Identifier Type</b>	Indicates the mechanism used by the server to recognize the client (MAC address or DHCP device name).
<b>Identifier</b>	The actual MAC address or DHCP device name.
<b>Netmask</b>	The client device subnet mask.
<b>Gateway</b>	The IP address a DHCP client device will use to access other devices that are not located on the local subnet. A value of 0.0.0.0 constrains the DHCP client device by allowing it to communicate only with devices on the local subnet.

### Manually Adding Remote Modules to the DHCP Service

Remote modules that are part of the CPU configuration – and which have subscribed to the CPU IP addressing service – automatically appear in the **Automatically Added Devices** list.

Other remote modules that are not part of the CPU configuration can be manually added to the CPU DHCP IP addressing service.

Manually add networked Ethernet modules that are not part of the CPU configuration to the CPU IP addressing service:

Step	Description
1	In the <b>Address Server</b> page, click the <b>Add</b> button in the <b>Manually Added Devices</b> field to instruct Unity Pro to add an empty row to the list.

Step	Description	
2	In the new row, configure the following parameters for the client device:	
	IP Address	Type in the IP address of the client device.
	Identifier Type	Select the type of value the client device will use to identify itself to the FDR server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● MAC address</li><li>● device Name</li></ul>
	Identifier	Depending upon the identifier type, type in the client device setting for the MAC address or name.
	Netmask	Type in the client device subnet mask.
	Gateway	Type in the gateway address that remote devices can use to communicate with devices located on other networks. Use 0.0.0.0 if remote devices will not communicate with devices located on other networks.
3	Refer to the topic Configuring Properties in the Device Editor ( <a href="#">see page 180</a> ) for instructions on how to apply edited properties to networked devices.	

---

## Section 8.5

### Diagnostics through the Unity Pro DTM Browser

---

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Introducing Diagnostics in the Unity Pro DTM	192
Inputs	194
Bandwidth Diagnostics	197
RSTP Diagnostics	199
Network Time Service Diagnostics	201
Local Slave / Connection Diagnostics	203
Local Slave or Connection I/O Value Diagnostics	206
Logging	207

# Introducing Diagnostics in the Unity Pro DTM

## Introduction

The Unity Pro DTM provides diagnostics information that is collected at configured polling intervals. Use this information to diagnose the operation of the embedded Ethernet scanner service in the CPU.

## Connect the DTM

Before you can open the diagnostics page, make the connection between the DTM for the CPU's embedded scanner service:

Step	Action
1	Open a Unity Pro project.
2	Open the Unity Pro <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
3	Right-click the name that is assigned to your CPU in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
4	Select <b>Connect</b> .

## Open the Page

Access the **Diagnosis** information:

Step	Action
1	Right-click the name that is assigned to your CPU in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
2	Select <b>Device Menu</b> → <b>Diagnosis</b> to view the available diagnostics pages.

## Diagnostics Information



The diagnostics window has two distinct areas:

- left pane: LED icons indicate the operating status of modules, devices, and connections.
- right pane: These pages show diagnostics data for these items:
  - CPU's embedded scanner service
  - local slave nodes that are activated for the CPU's embedded scanner service
  - EtherNet/IP connections between the CPU's embedded scanner service and a remote EtherNet/IP device

When the appropriate DTM is connected to the CPU, Unity Pro sends an explicit message request once per second to detect the state of the CPU's embedded scanner service and of all the remote devices and EtherNet/IP connections linked to the CPU.



Unity Pro places one of these status icons over the module, device, or connection in the left pane of the **Diagnostic** window to indicate its current status:

Icon	Communication module	Connection to a remote device
	Run state is indicated.	The health bit for every EtherNet/IP connection and Modbus TCP request (to a remote device, sub-device, or module) is set to active (1).
	One of these states is indicated: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● unknown</li><li>● stopped</li><li>● not connected</li></ul>	The health bit for at least one EtherNet/IP connection or Modbus TCP request (to a remote device, sub-device, or module) is set to inactive (0).

# Inputs

## Input Parameter Description

Parameter	Type	Description
EnableDFB	BOOL	<p>Enables the normal execution of the control block.</p> <p>When the input is disabled, the entire DFB is restarted (statuses, output values, counters, so on are lost) and output values are set to 0 or FALSE.</p> <p>Activating this input enables communications with the devices for their operation.</p> <p>Public variable values are loaded during the first enabling cycle.</p>
EnableDevice	BOOL	<p>Enables the device when the input is set to TRUE and disables it when the input is set to FALSE.</p> <p>This input variable is valid if the <code>EnableDFB</code> variable is active.</p>
ResetFail	BOOL	<p>A rising edge on this signal clears any detected faults if present.</p> <p>It resets both communications interruption and inoperable device. In case of inoperable device, it sends a reset command to the device if <code>ControlCommand</code> is TRUE.</p> <p>You can carry out communication resets when required. To carry out an automatic reset, use the <code>ResetMode</code> public variable.</p> <div> <p>Fail AND (NOT Reseting) —  — ResetFail</p> </div>
QuickStop	BOOL	<p>Enables a quick servo stop while the device is kept active.</p> <p>The <code>QuickStop</code> command has to be issued again after it is cancelled, for the device to resume operation. It is state based.</p>
Halt	BOOL	<p>Enables a pause during mode execution.</p> <p>Resume operation after the <code>Halt</code> command is cancelled. It is state based.</p>

Parameter	Type	Description	
Commands	LEXIUMCommand	Includes an entire set of parameter configuration values for each one of the modes.	
	<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
	JogMode	INT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 = Forward low speed.</li> <li>2 = Backward low speed.</li> <li>5 = Forward high speed.</li> <li>6 = Backward high speed.</li> </ul>
	HomingMode	INT	Selects the Homing mode.
	ReferencePosition	DINT	Reference position for Homing and Dimension set modes in user units.
	GearNumerator	DINT	You can use electronic gear numerator in Gear mode.
	GearDenominator	INT	You can use electronic gear denominator in Gear mode.
	TorqueSetpoint	INT	You can use set-point in Torque mode.
ExecuteMode	BOOL	<p>Executes the mode selected with <code>Mode</code>, based on the set-points for each mode. Depending on the mode selected, <code>ExecuteMode</code> is edge-based or state-based.</p> <p>Edge based</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PTP</li> <li>DimensionSet</li> <li>Homing</li> </ul> <p>State based</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jog</li> <li>Speed control</li> <li>Torque control</li> <li>Gear</li> </ul>	
Mode	INT	Operating mode	
Setpoint	INT	<p>The speed set-point is requested for the Speed mode, ABS PTP, and REL PTP modes. It is measured in engineering units and you can configure these units with the following public variables:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HighRangeRpm</li> <li>LowRangeRpm</li> <li>HighRangeEngUnit</li> <li>LowRangeEngUnit</li> </ul> <p>Verify that the variable is within the correct range. The DFB does the conversion between engineering units and speed driver rpms (rotation per milli second).</p>	
TargetPosition	INT	Indicates the target position in the ABS PTP and REL PTP modes.	
Communication OK	INT	A bit is used to indicate whether or not the node is present on the bus. You can use this signal in each of the functional module to check whether the physical node is present on the bus or not.	

Parameter	Type	Description
ControlCommand	INT	<p>Indicates to the block whether the servo drive is controlled from a source external to the system (0) or not (1).</p> <p>If <code>ControlCommand</code> is <code>TRUE</code>, it enables to avoid generating incorrect follow-up alarms while the device is controlled from an external source.</p> <p>If <code>ControlCommand</code> is <code>FALSE</code>, the block only performs read operations to determine the status of the device, and it does not send any device control or reset commands.</p> <p>If the device is controlled through physical inputs/outputs, this input is set to <code>FALSE</code>.</p>
Inputs	ARRAY OF INT	<p>Holds an array structure with data obtained from the device. You can control the servo driver with this input variable. This input is reserved for the DFB, and you cannot use this input directly. For the control block to work properly, allocate the structure (%MWx). Refer to the Communications Technologies.</p>

## Bandwidth Diagnostics

### Introduction

Use the **Bandwidth** page to view the dynamic and static data for the bandwidth use by the embedded Ethernet scanner service in the CPU.

**NOTE:** Before you can open the diagnostics page, make the connection between the DTM for the CPU's embedded scanner service and the physical module.

### Open the Page

Access the **Bandwidth** information:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , right-click the name that is assigned to your CPU.
2	Select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnosis</b> .
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnosis</b> window, select the CPU node.
4	Select the <b>Bandwidth</b> tab to open that page.

### Data Display

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display the static or dynamic data:

Checkbox	Description
Selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms.</li> <li>Increment the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed.</li> </ul>
De-selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display static data.</li> <li>Do not increment the number at the top of the table. That number now represents a constant value.</li> </ul>

### Bandwidth Diagnostic Parameters

The **Bandwidth** page displays the following parameters for the communication module:

Parameter	Description
I/O - Scanner:	
EtherNet/IP Sent	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has sent in packets/second.
EtherNet/IP Received	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has received in packets/second.
Modbus TCP Received	The number of Modbus TCP requests the module has sent in packets/second.
Modbus TCP Responses	The number of Modbus TCP responses that the CPU's embedded scanner service has received in packets/second.
I/O - Adapter:	

Parameter	Description
EtherNet/IP Sent	The number of EtherNet/IP packets (per second) that the CPU's embedded scanner service has sent in the role of a local slave.
EtherNet/IP Received	The number of EtherNet/IP packets (per second) that the CPU's embedded scanner service has received in the role of a local slave.
I/O - Module	
Module Capacity	The maximum number of packets (per second) that the CPU's embedded scanner service can process.
Module Utilization	The percentage of the CPU's embedded scanner service capacity being used by the application.
Messaging - Client:	
EtherNet/IP Activity	The number of explicit messages (packets per second) sent by the CPU's embedded scanner service using the EtherNet/IP protocol.
Modbus TCP Activity	The number of explicit messages (packets per second) sent by the CPU's embedded scanner service using the Modbus TCP protocol.
Messaging - Server:	
EtherNet/IP Activity	The number of server messages (packets per second) received by the CPU's embedded scanner service using the EtherNet/IP protocol.
Modbus TCP Activity	The number of server messages (packets per second) received by the CPU's embedded scanner service using the Modbus TCP protocol.
Module:	
Processor Utilization	The percentage of the CPU's embedded scanner service processing capacity used by the present level of communication activity.

## RSTP Diagnostics

### Introduction

Use the **RSTP Diagnostic** page to view the status of the RSTP service of the embedded Ethernet scanner service in the CPU. The page displays dynamically generated and static data for the module.

**NOTE:** Before you can open the diagnostics page, make the connection between the DTM for the CPU's embedded scanner service and the physical module.

### Open the Page

Access the **RSTP Diagnosis** information:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , right-click the name that is assigned to your CPU.
2	Select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnosis</b> .
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnosis</b> window, select the CPU node.
4	Select <b>RSTP Diagnostic</b> tab to open that page.

### Data Display

Select the **Refresh Every 500ms** check box to display the static or dynamic data:

Checkbox	Description
Selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms.</li> <li>Increment the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed.</li> </ul>
De-selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display static data.</li> <li>Do not increment the number at the top of the table. That number now represents a constant value.</li> </ul>

### RSTP Diagnostic Parameters

The **RSTP Diagnostic** page displays the following parameters for each CPU port:

Parameter	Description
Bridge RSTP Diagnostic:	
Bridge Priority	This 8-byte field contains the two-byte value that is assigned to the CPU's embedded Ethernet switch.
MAC Address	The Ethernet address of the CPU, found on the front of the CPU.
Designated Root ID	The Bridge ID of the root device.
Root Path Cost	The aggregate cost of port costs from this switch back to the root device.

Parameter	Description
Default Hello Time	The interval at which Configuration BPDU messages are transmitted during a network convergence. For RSTP this is a fixed value of 2 seconds.
Learned Hello Time	The current Hello Time value learned from the root switch.
Configured Max Age	The value (6 ... 40) that other switches use for MaxAge when this switch is acting as the root.
Learned Max Age	The maximum age learned from the root switch. This is the actual value currently used by this switch.
Total Topology Changes	The total number of topology changes detected by this switch since the management entity was last reset or initialized.
Ports ETH 2 and ETH 3 RSTP Statistics:	
Status	The port's current state as defined by RSTP protocol. This state controls the action the port takes when it receives a frame. Possible values are: disabled, discarding, learning, forwarding.
Role:	The port's current role per RSTP protocol. Possible values are: root port, designated port, alternate port, backup port, disabled port.
Cost	The logical cost of this port as a path to the root switch. If this port is configured for AUTO then the cost is determined based on the connection speed of the port.
STP Packets	<p>A value in this field indicates that a device on the network has the STP protocol enabled.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Other devices that are enabled for STP can severely affect the network convergence times. Schneider Electric recommends that you disable the STP protocol (but not the RSTP protocol) on every network device that supports STP.</li><li>• The CPU does not support the STP protocol. The CPU's embedded switch ignores STP packets.</li></ul>



## Network Time Service Diagnostics

### Introduction

Use the **Network Time Service Diagnostic** page to display dynamically generated data describing the operation of the simple network time protocol (SNTP) service that you configured in the network time server page in Unity Pro.

**NOTE:** Before you can open the diagnostics page, make the connection between the DTM for the target communication module and the CPU.

### Open the Page

Access the **NTP Diagnostic** information:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , find the name that is assigned to the CPU.
2	Right-click the CPU DTM, and select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnostics</b> .
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnostics</b> window, select the CPU node.
4	Select the <b>NTP Diagnostic</b> tab to open that page.

Click the **Reset Counter** button to reset the counting statistics on this page to 0.

### Network Time Service Diagnostic Parameters

This table describes the time synchronization service parameters:

Parameter	Description
Refresh Every 500ms	Check this box to dynamically update the page every 500ms. The number of times this page has been refreshed appears immediately to the right.
Network Time Service	Monitor the operational status of the service in the module: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>green</i>: operational</li> <li><i>orange</i>: disabled</li> </ul>
Network Time Server Status	Monitor the communication status of the NTP server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>green</i>: The NTP server is reachable.</li> <li><i>red</i>: The NTP server is not reachable.</li> </ul>
Last Update	Elapsed time, in seconds, since the most recent NTP server update.
Current Date	System date
Current Time	The system time is presented in the <i>hh:mm:ss</i> format.
DST Status	Set the status of the automatic daylight savings service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>ON</i>: The automatic adjustment of daylight savings is enabled. The current date and time reflect the daylight savings time adjustment.</li> <li><i>OFF</i>: The automatic adjustment of daylight savings is disabled. (The current date and time may not reflect the daylight savings time adjustment.)</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description						
Quality	This correction (in seconds) applies to the local counter at every NTP server update. Numbers greater than 0 indicate increasingly excessive traffic condition or an NTP server overload.						
Requests	This value represents the total number of client requests sent to the NTP server.						
Responses	This value represents the total number of server responses sent from the NTP server.						
Errors	This value represents the total number of unanswered NTP requests.						
Last Error	This value indicates the last detected error code received from the NTP client: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 0: good NTP configuration</li> <li>● 1: late NTP server response (can be caused by excessive network traffic or server overload)</li> <li>● 2: NTP not configured</li> <li>● 3: invalid NTP parameter setting</li> <li>● 4: NTP component disabled</li> <li>● 7: unrecoverable NTP transmission</li> <li>● 9: invalid NTP server IP address</li> <li>● 15: invalid syntax in the custom time zone rules file</li> </ul>						
Primary / Secondary NTP Server IP	The IP addresses correspond to the primary and secondary NTP servers. <b>NOTE:</b> A green LED to the right of the primary or secondary NTP server IP address indicates the active server.						
Auto Adjust Clock for Daylight Savings	Configure the daylight savings adjustment service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● enabled</li> <li>● disabled</li> </ul>						
DST Start / DST End	Specify the day on which daylight savings time begins and ends: <table> <tr> <td>Month</td><td>Set the month in which daylight savings time starts or ends.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Day of Week</td><td>Set the day of the week on which daylight savings time starts or ends.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Week#</td><td>Set the occurrence of the specified day within the specified month.</td></tr> </table>	Month	Set the month in which daylight savings time starts or ends.	Day of Week	Set the day of the week on which daylight savings time starts or ends.	Week#	Set the occurrence of the specified day within the specified month.
Month	Set the month in which daylight savings time starts or ends.						
Day of Week	Set the day of the week on which daylight savings time starts or ends.						
Week#	Set the occurrence of the specified day within the specified month.						
Time Zone	Select the time zone plus or minus Universal Time, Coordinated (UTC)						
Offset	Configure the time (in minutes) to be combined with the time zone selection (above) to produce the system time.						
Polling Period	Set the frequency with which the NTP client requests an updated time from the NTP server						

## Local Slave / Connection Diagnostics

### Introduction

Use the **Local Slave Diagnostic** page and the **Connection Diagnostic** page to display the I/O status and production/consumption information for a selected local slave or connection.

**NOTE:** Before you can open the diagnostics page, make the connection between the DTM for the target communication module and the CPU.

### Open the Page

Access the diagnostics information:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , find the name that is assigned to the CPU.
2	Right-click the CPU DTM, and select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnosis</b> .
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnosis</b> window, select the CPU node.
4	Select the <b>Local Slave Diagnostic</b> tab or the <b>Connection Diagnostic</b> tab to open that page.

### Data Display

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display the static or dynamic data:

Checkbox	Description
Selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms.</li> <li>Increment the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed.</li> </ul>
De-selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display static data.</li> <li>Do not increment the number at the top of the table. That number now represents a constant value.</li> </ul>

### Local Slave / Connection Diagnostic Parameters

This following tables display the diagnostic parameters for the selected local slave or scanner connection.

This table shows the **Status** diagnostic parameters for the selected connection:

Parameter	Description
Input	An integer representing input status.
Output	An integer representing output status.
General	An integer representing basic connection status.
Extended	An integer representing extended connection status.

The **Input** and **Output** status diagnostic parameters can present these values:

Input/Output Status (dec)	Description
0	OK
33	Time-out
53	IDLE
54	Connection established
58	Not connected (TCP)
65	Not connected (CIP)
68	Connection establishing
70	Not connected (EPIC)
77	Scanner stopped

This table shows the **Counter** diagnostic parameters for the selected connection:

Parameter	Description
Frame Error	Increments each time a frame is not sent by missing resources or is impossible to send.
Time-Out	Increments each time a connection times out.
Refused	Increments when connection is refused by the remote station.
Production	Increments each time a message is produced.
Consumption	Increments each time a message is consumed.
Production Byte	Total of produced messages, in bytes, since the communication module was last reset.
Consumption Byte	Total of consumed messages, in bytes, since the communication module was last reset.
Theoretical Packets per second	Packets per second calculated using current configuration value.
Real Packets per second	Actual number of packets per second generated by this connection.

This table shows the **Diagnostic** parameters for the selected connection:

Parameter	Description
CIP Status	An integer representing CIP status.
Extended Status	An integer representing extended CIP status.
Production Connection ID	The connection ID.
Consumption Connection ID	The connection ID.

Parameter	Description
O -> T API	Actual packet interval (API) of the production connection.
T -> O API	Actual packet interval (API) of the consumption connection.
O -> T RPI	Requested packet interval (RPI) of the production connection.
T -> O RPI	Requested packet interval (RPI) of the consumption connection.

This table shows the **Socket Diagnostics** diagnostic parameters for the selected connection:

Parameter	Description
Socket ID	Internal Identification of the socket.
Remote IP Address	IP address of the remote station for this connection.
Remote Port	Port number of the remote station for this connection.
Local IP Address	IP address of the communication module for this connection.
Local Port	Port number of the communication module for this connection.

This table shows the **Production** diagnostic parameters for the selected connection:

Parameter	Description
Sequence Number	The number of the sequence in the production.
Max Time	Maximum time between two produced messages.
Min Time	Minimum time between two produced messages.
RPI	Current production time.
Overrun	Increments each time a produced message exceeds RPI.
Underrun	Increments each time a produced message is less than RPI.

This table shows the **Consumption** diagnostic parameters for the selected connection:

Parameter	Description
Sequence Number	The number of the sequence in the consumption.
Max Time	Maximum time between two consumption messages.
Min Time	Minimum time between two consumption messages.
RPI	Current consumption time.
Over Run	Increments each time a consumed message exceeds RPI.
Under Run	Increments each time a consumed message is less than RPI.

# Local Slave or Connection I/O Value Diagnostics

## Introduction

Use the **I/O Values** page to display both the input data image and output data image for the selected local slave or scanner connection.

**NOTE:** Before you can open the diagnostics page, make the connection between the DTM for the target communication module.

## Open the Page

Access the **I/O Values** information:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , find the name that is assigned to the CPU DTM.
2	Right-click the CPU DTM , and select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnosis</b> .
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnosis</b> window, select the CPU.
4	Select the <b>I/O Values</b> tab.

## Data Display

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display the static or dynamic data:

Checkbox	Description
Selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Display data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms.</li><li>● Increment the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed.</li></ul>
De-selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Display static data.</li><li>● Do not increment the number at the top of the table. That number now represents a constant value.</li></ul>

## Local Slave / Scanner Connection I/O Values

This page displays theses parameters for either a local slave or a remote device connection input and output values:

Parameter	Description
Input/Output data display	A display of the local slave or remote device input or output data image.
Length	The number of bytes in the input or output data image.
Status	The Scanner Diagnostic object's status, with respect to the read of the input or output data image.

## Logging

### Description

Unity Pro maintains a log of events for:

- the Unity Pro embedded FDT container
- each Ethernet communication module DTM, and
- each EtherNet/IP remote device DTM

Events relating to the Unity Pro FDT container are displayed in the **FDT log event** page of the **Output Window**.

Events relating to a communication module or remote EtherNet/IP device are displayed:

- in configuration mode: in the **Device Editor**, by selecting the **Logging** node in the left pane
- in diagnostic mode: in the **Diagnostics** window, by selecting the **Logging** node in the left pane

### Logging Attributes

The **Logging** window displays the result of an operation or function performed by Unity Pro. Each log entry includes the following attributes:

Attribute	Description	
Date/Time	The time the event occurred, displayed in the format: yyyy-mm--dd hh:mm:ss	
Log Level	Information	A successfully completed operation.
	Warning	An operation that Unity Pro completed, but which may lead to a subsequent error.
	Error	An operation that Unity Pro was unable to complete.
Message	A brief description of the core meaning of the event.	
Detail Message	A more detailed description of the event, which may include parameter names, location paths, etc.	

# Section 8.6

## Online Action

---

**What Is in This Section?**

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Online Action	209
EtherNet/IP Objects Tab	211
Service Port Tab	212
Pinging a Network Device	213



## Online Action

### Introduction

You can view and configure the settings in the **Online Action** menu when the M580 CPU is connected through the Unity Pro **DTM Browser**.

### Accessing Online Action

Follow these directions to access the **Online Action** settings for the M580 CPU:

Step	Action
1	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> in Unity Pro ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
2	Select the M580 DTM in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
3	Connect the DTM to the Unity Pro application ( <b>Edit</b> → <b>Connect</b> ).
4	Right-click the M580 DTM.
5	Scroll to the <b>Online Action</b> menu ( <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Additional functions</b> → <b>Online Action</b> ).
6	3 tabs appear: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Ethernet/IP Objects</b></li> <li>● <b>Port Configuration</b></li> <li>● <b>Ping</b></li> </ul>

### EtherNet/IP Objects

Displays object parameters value when available.

Click **Refresh** to update the displayed values.

### Port Configuration

Configure and read the service port mode:

Field	Description
<b>Service Port Mode</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Access</b> (default)</li> <li>● <b>Mirroring</b></li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This mode can also be set in the CPU configuration tabs (<a href="#">see page 165</a>).</p>
<b>Access Port Configuration</b>	Displays the access port configuration information (refer to CPU configuration tabs ( <a href="#">see page 165</a> )).
<b>Port Mirroring Configuration</b>	Displays the port mirroring configuration (refer to CPU configuration tabs ( <a href="#">see page 165</a> )).

**Ping**

Field	Parameter	Description
<b>Address</b>	<b>IP Address</b>	Type the IP address to ping.
<b>Ping</b>	<b>Ping</b>	Click to ping the address set.
	<b>Ping Result</b>	Displays the ping result.
	<b>Repeat (100ms)</b>	Select this parameter to repeat ping if no reply is received.
	<b>Stop on Error</b>	Select this parameter to stop repeating ping if an error is detected when <b>Repeat (100ms)</b> is selected.
	<b>Clear</b>	Click to clear the <b>Ping Result</b> display.

## EtherNet/IP Objects Tab

### Introduction

Use the **EtherNet/IP Objects** tab in the **Online Action** window:

- Retrieve and display current data describing the state of CIP objects for the selected CPU or remote EtherNet/IP device.
- Reset the selected CPU or remote EtherNet/IP device.

### Access the Page

Open the **EtherNet/IP Objects** tab:

Step	Action
1	Connect the DTM to the module.
2	Open the <b>Online Action</b> page.
3	Select the <b>EtherNet/IP Objects</b> tab.

### Available CIP Objects

You can retrieve CIP objects according to the Unity Pro operating mode:

Mode	Available CIP Objects
Standard	Identity object
Advanced	Identity object
	Connection Manager object
	TCP/IP Interface object
	Ethernet Link object
	QoS object

### Advanced Mode

When advanced mode is enabled, select an object in the **Object** list.

These buttons are available in advanced mode:

Button	Action
<b>Refresh</b>	Click this button to update the data.
<b>Reset Device</b>	Click this button to reset the CPU or remote EtherNet/IP device.

# Service Port Tab

## Introduction

Use the **Service Port** tab in the **Online Action** window to view and edit communication port properties for a distributed EtherNet/IP device. Use this tab to execute these commands:

- *Refresh*: Use a Get command to retrieve port configuration settings from a distributed EtherNet/IP device.
- *Update*: Use a Set command to write all or selected edited values to the same distributed EtherNet/IP device

The configuration information on the **Service Port** tab is sent in EtherNet/IP explicit messages that employ the address and messaging settings configured for Ethernet/IP explicit messaging (below).

## Access the Page

Open the **EtherNet/IP Objects** tab:

Step	Action
1	Connect the DTM to the module.
2	Open the <b>Online Action</b> page.
3	Select the <b>EtherNet/IP Objects</b> tab.
4	Configure the Service port with the instructions from the offline configuration.
5	Click the <b>Update</b> button to apply the new configuration.

## Pinging a Network Device

### Overview

Use the Unity Pro ping function to send an ICMP echo request to a target Ethernet device to determine:

- if the target device is present, and if so
- the elapsed time to receive an echo response from the target device

The target device is identified by its IP address setting. Enter only valid IP addresses in the **IP Address** field.

The ping function can be performed in the **Ping** page of the **Online Action** window:

### Pinging a Network Device

Ping a network device:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the CPU upstream of the remote EtherNet/IP device you want to ping.
2	Right-click and select <b>Device Menu</b> → <b>Online Action</b> . <b>Result:</b> The <b>Online Action</b> window opens.

Step	Action
3	<p>In the <b>Online Action</b> window, select the device you want to ping.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The window displays pages containing online information for the selected device.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The specific collection of displayed pages depends on the type of device selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• the CPU</li><li>• a remote EtherNet/IP device</li><li>• a remote Modbus TCP device</li></ul>
4	<p>Select the <b>Ping</b> page. To send...</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• a single ping: Deselect the <b>Repeat</b> checkbox.</li><li>• a series of pings (1 every 100 ms): Select the <b>Repeat</b> checkbox.</li></ul>
5	(Optional) Select <b>Stop on Error</b> to stop pinging an unsuccessful communication.
6	Click <b>Ping</b> once to begin pinging.
7	Click <b>Ping</b> a second time to stop repeated pinging, where no error has been detected.
8	The <b>Ping Result</b> box displays the ping outcome. Click <b>Clear</b> to empty the <b>Ping Result</b> box.

---

## Section 8.7

### DTM Device Lists

---

#### Introduction

This section describes the connection of an M580 CPU to other network nodes through the Unity Pro **DTM Browser**.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
<b>Device List</b> Configuration and Connection Summary	216
Device List Parameters	219
Device DDT Names for the M580 CPU	223

# Device List Configuration and Connection Summary

## Introduction

The Device List contains read-only properties that summarize these items:

- configuration data:
  - input data image
  - output data image
  - maximum and actual numbers of devices, connections, and packets
- Modbus request and EtherNet/IP connection summary

## Open the Page

View the read-only properties of the M580 CPU in the Unity Pro **Device List**:

Step	Action
1	Open your Unity Pro project.
2	Open the DTM Browser ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
3	Double-click the CPU DTM in the <b>DTM Browser</b> to open the configuration window. <b>NOTE:</b> You can also right-click the CPU DTM and select <b>Open</b> .
4	Select <b>Device List</b> in the navigation tree.

## Configuration Summary Data

Select **Device List** and view the **Configuration Summary** table on the **Summary** tab to see values for these items:

- **Input**
- **Output**
- **Configuration Size**

Expand (+) the **Input** row to view the **Input Current Size** values:

Description	Source
This value is the sum of Modbus requests and EtherNet/IP connection sizes.	This value is configured in the <b>General</b> page for a selected distributed device and connection.

Expand (+) the **Output** row to view the **Output Current Size** values:

Description	Source
This value is the sum of Modbus requests and EtherNet/IP connection sizes.	This value is configured in the <b>General</b> page for a selected distributed device and connection.



Expand (+) the **Configuration Size** row in the **Connection Summary** table to view these values:

Name	Description	Source
<b>Maximum Number of DIO Devices</b>	the maximum number of distributed devices that can be added to the configuration	predefined
<b>Current Number of DIO Devices</b>	the number of distributed devices in the current configuration	network design in the Unity Pro device editor
<b>Maximum Number of DIO Connections</b>	the maximum number of connections to distributed devices that can be managed by the CPU	predefined
<b>Current Number of DIO Connections</b>	the number of connections to distributed devices in the current configuration	network design in the Unity Pro device editor
<b>Maximum Number of Packets</b>	the maximum number of packets per second the module is able to manage	predefined
<b>Current Number of Input Packets</b>	total number of input packets (traffic) per second, based on the current number of modules and its configured input data	network design in the Unity Pro device editor
<b>Current Number of Output Packets</b>	total number of output packets (traffic) per second, based on the current number of modules and its configured output data	network design in the Unity Pro device editor
<b>Current Number of Total Packets</b>	total number of packets (traffic in both directions) per second, based on the current number of modules and its configured I/O data	network design in the Unity Pro device editor

### Request / Connection Summary Data

Select **Device List** and view the **Request / Connection Summary** table on the **Summary** tab. The Unity Pro DTM uses this information to calculate the total bandwidth that distributed equipment consumes:

Column	Description
<b>Connection Bit</b>	the offset for both the connection's health bit and control bit
<b>Task</b>	the task that is associated with this connection
<b>Input Object</b>	the ID of the input object associated with the connection (See the note following the table.)
<b>Output Object</b>	the ID of the output object associated with the connection (See the note following the table.)
<b>Device</b>	the device <b>Number</b> as set in the <b>Properties</b> configuration page for the local slave or remote device
<b>Device Name</b>	a unique name associated with the device that owns the connection

Column	Description
<b>Type</b>	the target device type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● EtherNet/IP</li> <li>● Local Slave</li> <li>● Modbus TCP</li> </ul>
<b>Address</b>	the target device IP address for remote devices (does not apply to local slaves)
<b>Rate (msec)</b>	the RPI (for EtherNet/IP) or the repetitive rate (for Modbus TCP), in ms
<b>Input Packets per Second</b>	the number of input (T->O) packets per second exchanged over this connection
<b>Output Packets per Second</b>	the number of output (O->T) packets per second exchanged over this connection
<b>Packets per Second</b>	the total number of packets per second exchanged over this connection in both Input and output directions
<b>Bandwidth Usage</b>	the total bandwidth used by this connection (total bytes traffic)
<b>Size In</b>	the number of input words configured for this remote device
<b>Size Out</b>	the number of output words configured for this remote device

**NOTE:** The numeric identifiers in the **Input Object** and **Output Object** columns represent the objects associated with a single device connection (scan line). For example, if an EtherNet/IP connection has an input object of 260 and an output object of 261, the corresponding control bits for this connection are in the DEVICE\_CNX\_CTRL\_256\_271 field in the M580 CPU device DDT. Object 260 is the fifth bit and object 261 is the sixth bit in this field. There can be multiple connections for a device. Set the corresponding bits to control the input and output objects for these connections.

## Device List Parameters

### Introduction

Configure parameters for devices in the **Device List** on these tabs:

- **Properties**
- **Address Setting**
- **Request Setting** (Modbus devices only)

### View the Configuration Tabs

Navigate to the **Device List** configuration tabs

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser (Tools →DTM Browser)</b> , double-click the DTM that corresponds to the Ethernet communication module that is associated with DTM.
2	In the navigation pane, expand (+) the <b>Device List</b> to see the associated Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP devices.
3	Select a device from the <b>Device List</b> to view the <b>Properties</b> , <b>Address Setting</b> , and <b>Request Setting</b> tabs tabs. <b>NOTE:</b> These tabs are described in detail below.

### Properties Tab

Configure the **Properties** tab to perform these tasks:

- Add the device to the configuration.
- Remove the device from the configuration.
- Edit the base name for variables and data structures used by the device.
- Indicate how input and output items are created and edited.

Configure the **Properties** tab:

Field	Parameter	Description
<b>Properties</b>	<b>Number</b>	The relative position of the device in the list, from 0...127.
	<b>Active Configuration</b>	<b>Enabled:</b> Add this device to the Unity Pro project configuration. <b>Disabled:</b> Remove this device from the Unity Pro project configuration.
<b>IO Structure Name</b>	<b>Structure Name</b>	Unity Pro automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name.
	<b>Variable Name</b>	<b>Variable Name:</b> An auto-generated variable name is based on the alias name.
	<b>Default Name</b>	Press this button to restore the default variable and structure names.

Field	Parameter	Description
<b>Items Management</b>	<b>Import Mode</b>	<p><b>Manual:</b> I/O items are manually added in the <b>Device Editor</b>. The I/O items list is not affected by changes to the device DTM.</p> <p><b>Automatic:</b> I/O items are taken from the device DTM and updated if the items list in the device DTM changes. Items cannot be edited in the <b>Device Editor</b>.</p>
	<b>Reimport Items</b>	Press this button to import the I/O items list from the device DTM, overwriting any manual I/O item edits. Enabled only when <b>Import mode</b> is set to <b>Manual</b> .

Click **Apply** to save your edits and leave the window open for further edits.

### Address Setting Tab

Configure the **Address Setting** page to perform these tasks:

- Configure the IP address for a device.
- Enable or disable DHCP client software for a device.

**NOTE:** When the DHCP client software is enabled in a Modbus device, it obtains its IP address from the DHCP server in the Ethernet communication module.

In the **Address Setting** page, edit these parameters to conform to your application's design and functionality:

Field	Parameter	Description
<b>Change Address</b>	<b>IP Address</b>	<p>By default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The first three octet values equal the first three octet values of the Ethernet communication module.</li> <li>• The fourth octet value equals this device Number setting. In this case, the default value is 004.</li> </ul> <p>In our continuing example, type in the address <b>192.168.1.17</b>.</p>

Field	Parameter	Description
Address Server	DHCP for this Device	<b>Enabled:</b> Activate the DHCP client in this device. The device obtains its IP address from the DHCP service provided by the Ethernet communication module and appears on the auto-generated DHCP client list.
		<b>Disabled (default):</b> Deactivates the DHCP client in this device.
		<b>NOTE:</b> For this example, select <b>Enabled</b> .
	Identified by	If <b>DHCP for this Device</b> is <b>Enabled</b> , it indicates the device identifier type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>MAC Address</b></li> <li>● <b>Device Name</b></li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> For this example, select <b>Device Name</b> .
	Identifier	If DHCP for this Device is Enabled, the specific device MAC Address or Name value. <p><b>NOTE:</b> For this example, accept the default setting of <b>NIP2212_01</b> (based on the <b>Alias name</b>).</p>
	Subnet Mask	The device subnet mask. <p><b>NOTE:</b> For this example, accept the default value (255.255.255.0).</p>
	Gateway	The gateway address used to reach this device. The default of 0.0.0.0 indicates this device is located on the same subnet as the Ethernet communication module. <p><b>NOTE:</b> For this example, accept the default value.</p>

Click **Apply** to save your edits, and leave the window open for further edits.

### Request Setting Tab

Configure the **Request Setting** tab to add, configure, and remove Modbus requests for the Modbus device. Each request represents a separate link between the communication module and the Modbus device.

**NOTE:** The **Request Setting** tab is available only when a Modbus TCP device is selected in the **Device List**.

Create a request:

Step	Action
1	Press the <b>Add Request</b> button to see a new request in the table. Press the <b>Add Request</b> button: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The new request appears in the table.</li> <li>● The corresponding request items appear in the <b>Device List</b>.</li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> The <b>Add Request</b> function is enabled only when <b>Import Mode</b> on the <b>Properties</b> tab is set to <b>Manual</b> .
2	Configure the request settings according to the table below.

Step	Action
3	Repeat these steps to create additional requests.
4	Press the <b>Apply</b> to save the request.

This table describes the **Request Settings** parameters for Modbus devices:

Setting	Description
<b>Connection Bit</b>	This bit indicates the read-only offset for the health bit for this connection. Offset values (starting at 0) are auto-generated by the Unity Pro DTM based on the connection type.
<b>Unit ID</b>	The Unit ID is the number used to identify the target of the connection. <b>NOTE:</b> Consult the manufacturer's user manual for the specific target device to find its Unit ID.
<b>Health Time Out (ms)</b>	This value represents the maximum allowed interval between device responses before a fault is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● valid range: 5 ... 65535 ms</li> <li>● interval: 5 ms</li> <li>● default: 1500 ms</li> </ul>
<b>Repetitive Rate (ms)</b>	This value represents the data scan rate in intervals of 5 ms. (The valid range is 0...60000 ms. The default is 60 ms.)
<b>RD Address</b>	This is the address of the input data image in the Modbus device.
<b>RD Length</b>	This value represents the number of words (0...125) in the Modbus device that the communication module reads.
<b>Last Value</b>	This value represents the behavior of input data in the application if communications are lost: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Hold Value</b> (default)</li> <li>● <b>Set To Zero</b></li> </ul>
<b>WR Address</b>	This is the address of the output data image in the Modbus device.
<b>WR Length</b>	This value represents the number of words (0...120) in the Modbus device to which the communication module writes.

Remove a request:

Step	Action
1	Click a row in the table.
2	Press the <b>Remove</b> button to remove the request. <b>NOTE:</b> The corresponding request items disappear from the <b>Device List</b> .
3	Press the <b>Apply</b> to save the configuration.

The next step is to connect the Unity Pro project to the Modbus device.

## Device DDT Names for the M580 CPU

### Access the M580 CPU Variables

View the variables for the M580 CPU:

Step	Action
1	In Unity Pro, open the <b>Project Browser (Tools →Project Browser)</b> .
2	In the <b>Project Browser</b> , double-click on <b>Variables &amp; FB instances</b> to open the <b>Variables</b> tab.
3	In the <b>Variables</b> tab, expand the fields associated with the M580 CPU (BMEP58_CPU) by clicking the plus (+) sign.

The variables associated with the CPU are listed in the **Name** column. The corresponding variable descriptions are in the **Comment** column ([see page 313](#)).

### Access the Device DDT Variables

View the variables associated with EtherNet/IP or Modbus devices:

Step	Action
1	Open the <b>Variables</b> tab (as shown in the above table).
2	In the <b>Variables</b> tab, expand the fields associated with an EtherNet/IP or Modbus device.

These inputs and outputs associated with EtherNet/IP or Modbus devices are described:

Name	Description
<b>Freshness</b>	This is a global bit: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>1</b>: All input objects below (<b>Freshness_1</b>, <b>Freshness_2</b>, etc.) for the associated device are true (<b>1</b>) and provide up-to-date data.</li> <li>● <b>0</b>: One or more inputs (below) is not connected and does not provide up-to-date data.</li> </ul>
<b>Freshness_1</b>	These bits represent individual input objects for the device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>1</b>: The input object in this row is true (<b>1</b>) and provides up-to-date data.</li> <li>● <b>0</b>: The input object is not connected (<b>0</b>) and does not provide up-to-date data.</li> </ul>
<b>Freshness_2</b>	
<b>Freshness_3</b>	
...	
(available)	The rows after the <b>Freshness</b> data are organized in groups of <b>Inputs</b> and <b>Outputs</b> that have user-defined names. The number of input and output rows depends on the maximum number of connections that a particular device supports.

# Section 8.8

## Explicit Messaging

---

### Introduction

The connection of the M580 CPU to a Unity Pro project (through the Unity Pro **DTM Browser**) allows for the configuration of EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP explicit messages.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Sending Explicit Messages to EtherNet/IP Devices	225
Sending Explicit Messages to Modbus Devices	227



## Sending Explicit Messages to EtherNet/IP Devices

### Introduction

Use the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message** window to send an explicit message from Unity Pro to the M580 CPU.

An explicit message can be connected or unconnected:

- **connected:** A connected explicit message contains both path information and a connection identifier to the target device.
- **unconnected:** An unconnected message requires path (addressing) information that identifies the destination device (and, optionally, device attributes).

You can use explicit messaging to perform many different services. Not every EtherNet/IP device supports every service.

### Accessing the Page

Before you can perform explicit messaging, connect the DTM for the M580 CPU to the CPU itself:

Step	Action
1	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> in Unity Pro ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
2	Select the M580 DTM in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
3	Right-click the M580 DTM.
4	Scroll to the EtherNet/IP explicit messaging page ( <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Additional functions</b> → <b>EtherNet/IP Explicit Message</b> ).

### Configuring Settings

Configure the explicit message using these settings on the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging** page:

Field	Setting
Address	<b>IP Address:</b> The IP address of the target device that is used to identify the target of the explicit message.
	<b>Class:</b> The <b>Class</b> integer (1 ... 65535) is the identifier of the target device that is used in the construction of the message path.
	<b>Instance:</b> The <b>Instance</b> integer (0 ... 65535) is the class instance of the target device that is used in the construction of the message path.
	<b>Attribute:</b> Check this box to enable the <b>Attribute</b> integer (0 ... 65535), which is the specific device property that is the target of the explicit message that is used in the construction of the message path.

Field	Setting
Service	<b>Number:</b> The <b>Number</b> is the integer (1 ... 127) associated with the service to be performed by the explicit message.
	<b>NOTE:</b> If you select <b>Custom Service</b> as the named service, type in a service number. This field is read-only for all other services.
	<b>Name:</b> Select the service that the explicit message is intended to perform.
	<b>Enter Path(hex):</b> Check this box to enable the message path field, where you can manually enter the entire path to the target device.
Data(hex)	<b>Data(hex):</b> This value represents the data to be sent to the target device for services that send data.
Messaging	<b>Connected:</b> Select this radial button to make the connection.
	<b>Unconnected:</b> Select this radial button to end the connection.
Response(hex)	The <b>Response</b> area contains the data sent to the configuration tool by the target device in hexadecimal format.
Status	The <b>Status</b> area displays messages that indicate whether or not the explicit message has succeeded.
Button	<b>Send to Device:</b> When your explicit message is configured, click <b>Send to Device</b> .

Click the **Close** button to save the changes and close the window.

## Sending Explicit Messages to Modbus Devices

### Introduction

Use the Modbus explicit messaging window to send an explicit message from Unity Pro to the M580 CPU.

You can use explicit messaging to perform many different services. Not every Modbus TCP device supports every service.

### Accessing the Page

Before you can perform explicit messaging, connect the DTM for the M580 CPU to the CPU itself:

Step	Action
1	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> in Unity Pro ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
2	Select the M580 DTM in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
3	Right-click the M580 DTM.
4	Scroll to the EtherNet/IP explicit messaging page ( <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Additional functions</b> → <b>Modbus Explicit Message</b> ).

### Configuring Settings

Configure the explicit message using these settings on the **Modbus Explicit Messaging** page:

Field	Setting
Address	<b>IP Address:</b> The IP address of the target device that is used to identify the target of the explicit message.
	<b>Start Address:</b> This setting is a component of the addressing path.
	<b>Quantity:</b> This setting is a component of the addressing path.
	<b>Read Device Id Code:</b> This read-only code represents the service that the explicit message is intended to perform.
	<b>Object Id:</b> This read-only identifier specifies the object that the explicit message is intended to access.
	<b>Unit Id:</b> This integer represents the device or module that is the target of the connection: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>255:</b> (default): Use this value to access the M580 CPU itself.</li> <li>● <b>0 ... 254:</b> Use these values to identify the device number of the target device behind a Modbus TCP to Modbus gateway.</li> </ul>
Service	<b>Number:</b> This integer (0 ... 255) represents the service to be performed by the explicit message.
	<b>Name:</b> Select the integer (0 ... 255) that represents the service that the explicit message is intended to perform.
Data	<b>Data(hex):</b> This value represents the data to be sent to the target device for services that send data.

Field	Setting
Response	The <b>Response</b> area displays any data sent to the configuration tool by the target device in hexadecimal format.
Status	The <b>Status</b> area displays messages indicating whether or not the explicit message has succeeded.
Button	<b>Send to Device:</b> After your explicit message is configured, click <b>Send to Device</b> .

Click the **Close** button to save the changes and close the window.

## Section 8.9

### Implicit Messaging

#### Introduction

This section extends the sample Unity Pro application and contains these instructions:

- Add an STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module to your Unity Pro application.
- Configure the STB NIC 2212 module.
- Configure EtherNet/IP connections to link the Ethernet communications module and the STB NIC 2212 network interface module.
- Configure I/O items for the Advantys island.

**NOTE:** The instructions in this section describe an example of a single, specific device configuration. For other configuration choices, refer to the Unity Pro help files.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Setting Up Your Network	230
Adding an STB NIC 2212 Device	231
Configuring STB NIC 2212 Properties	233
Configuring EtherNet/IP Connections	235
Configuring I/O Items	240
EtherNet/IP Implicit Messaging	254

## Setting Up Your Network

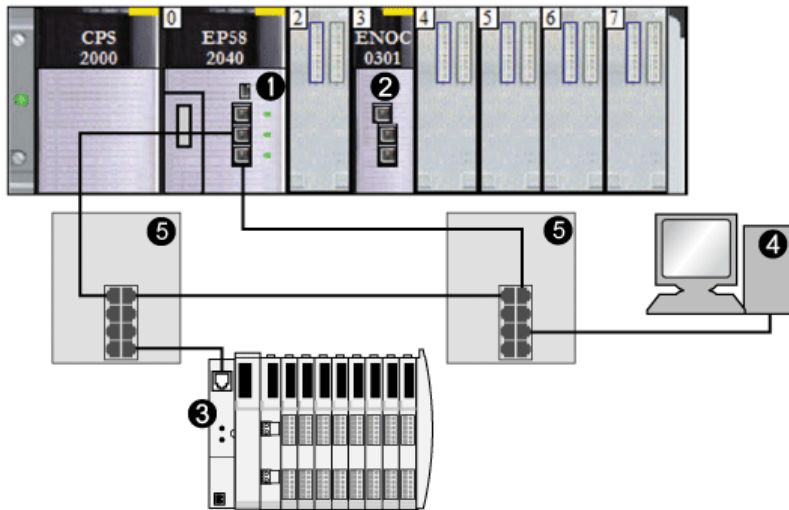
### Introduction

Use this example to establish communications between the M580 rack and an Advantys STB NIC 2212 network interface module (NIM).

The STB NIC 2212 is Schneider Electric's EtherNet/IP network interface module for Advantys islands.

### Network Topology

The Ethernet network devices used in this configuration include the following:



- 1 M580 CPU with DIO scanner service
- 2 BME NOC 03\*1 Ethernet communication module in slot 3 of the local rack
- 3 STB NIC 2212 NIM on an Advantys island
- 4 PC running Unity Pro software
- 5 dual-ring switch (DRS)

To re-create this example, use the IP addresses from your own configuration for these items:

- PC
- BME NOC 03\*1 Ethernet communication module
- STB NIC 2212 network interface module

**NOTE:** Unity Pro software running in the PC is used to configure the M580 CPU. In this example, the PC is indirectly wired to the CPU's Ethernet port via the Ethernet switch. Alternatively, you could bypass the switch and directly wire the PC to the CPU's Modbus ports.

## Adding an STB NIC 2212 Device

### Overview

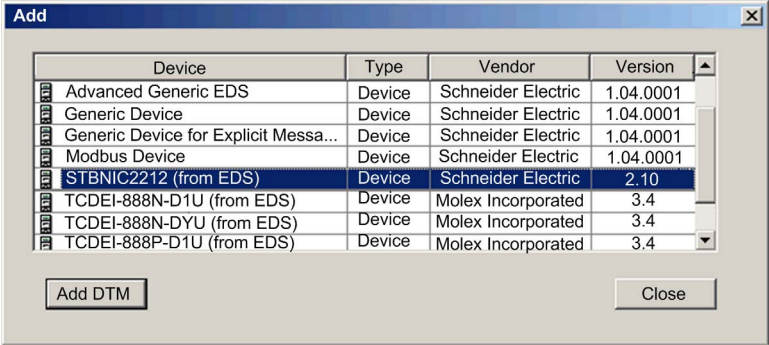
You can use the Unity Pro device library to add a remote device—in this example the STB NIC 2212 module—to your project. Only a remote device that is part of your Unity Pro device library can be added to your project.

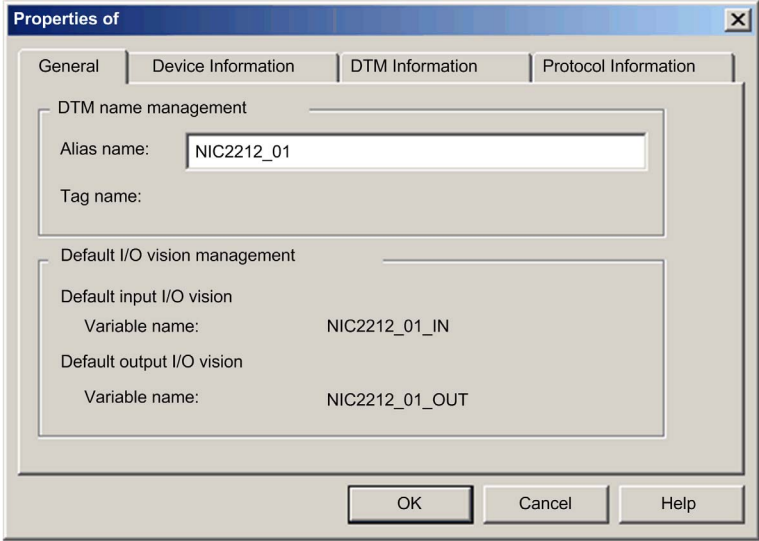
Alternatively, with a remote device already added to your device library, you can use automatic device discovery to populate your project. Perform automatic device discovery by using the **Field bus discovery** command with a communication module selected in the **DTM Browser**.

### Adding an STB NIC 2212 Remote Device

**NOTE:** This example uses a device-specific DTM. If you do not have a device-specific DTM, Unity Pro provides a generic device DTM.

Add the STB NIC 2212 to your project:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , right-click the DTM that corresponds to the Ethernet communication module.
2	Scroll to <b>Add</b> .
3	Select <b>STBNIC2212 (from EDS)</b> :  <b>NOTE:</b> Click a column name to sort the list of available devices. (For example, click <b>Device</b> to view the items in the first column in alphabetical order.)
4	Click the <b>Add DTM</b> button to see the association between the Ethernet communication module and the STB NIC 2212 in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
5	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , right-click the STB NIC 2212 node that is associated with the Ethernet communication module DTM.
6	Scroll to <b>Properties</b> .

Step	Action
7	<p>On the <b>General</b> tab, create a unique <b>Alias name</b>. (Using similar devices that use the same DTM can result in duplicate module names.) In this example, type in the name <b>NIC2212_01</b>:</p>  <p>Unity Pro uses the <b>Alias name</b> as the base for both structure and variable names.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The <b>Alias name</b> is the only editable parameter on this tab. The other parameters are read-only.</p>
8	<p>Click <b>OK</b> to add the STB NIC 2212 network interface module to the <b>DTM Browser</b>, beneath the communication module.</p>

The next step is to configure the device you have just added to the project.



## Configuring STB NIC 2212 Properties

### Introduction

Use Unity Pro to edit the settings for STB NIC 2212 device.

**NOTE:** To edit these settings, disconnect the DTM from a device ([see page 175](#)).

### Accessing the Device Properties

View the **Properties** tab:

Step	Action
1	Double-click the CPU DTM to access the configuration.
2	In the navigation tree, expand the <b>Device List</b> ( <a href="#">see page 216</a> ) to see the associated local slave instances.
3	Select the device that corresponds to the name <b>NIC2212_01</b> .
4	Select the <b>Properties</b> tab.

These configuration tabs are available for the device:

- **Properties**
- **Address Setting**

### Properties

Configure the **Properties** tab to perform these tasks:

- Add the STB NIC 2212 to the configuration.
- Remove the STB NIC 2212 from the configuration.
- Edit the base name for variables and data structures used by the STB NIC 2212.
- Indicate how input and output items are created and edited.

The descriptions for parameters ([see page 219](#)) in the **Properties** tab are described in the configuration chapter. Use these values and names from the sample configuration::

Field	Parameter	Description
<b>Properties</b>	<b>Number</b>	Accept the default.
	<b>Active Configuration</b>	Accept the default ( <b>Enabled</b> ).
<b>IO Structure Name</b>	<b>Structure Name</b>	Unity Pro automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case <b>T_NIP2212_01_IN</b> .
	<b>Variable Name</b>	<b>Variable Name:</b> Accept the auto-generated variable name (based on the alias name): <b>NIP2212_01_OUT</b> .
	<b>Default Name</b>	Press this button to restore the default variable and structure names. For this example, custom names are used.

Field	Parameter	Description
Items Management	Import Mode	Select <b>Manual</b> .
	Reimport Items	Press this button to import the I/O items list from the device DTM, overwriting any manual I/O item edits. Enabled only when <b>Import mode</b> is set to <b>Manual</b> .

Click **Apply** to save your edits and leave the window open.

### Address Setting

Use the **Address Setting** tab to enable the DHCP client in the STB NIC 2212 network interface module. When the DHCP client is enabled in the remote device, it obtains its IP address from the DHCP server in the Ethernet communication module

Configure the **Address Setting** page to perform these tasks:

- Configure the IP address for a device.
- Enable or disable DHCP client software for a device.

The descriptions for parameters in the **Address Setting** tab are described in the configuration chapter. Use these values and names from the sample configuration:

Field	Parameter	Description
Change Address	IP Address	In our continuing example, type in the address <b>192.168.1.6</b> .
Address Server	DHCP for this Device	Select <b>Enabled</b> .
	Identified by	Select <b>Device Name</b> .
	Identifier	Accept the default setting of <b>NIC2212_01</b> (based on the <b>Alias name</b> ).
	Mask	Accept the default value (255.255.255.0).
	Gateway	Accept the default value (0.0.0.0).

The next step is to configure the connection between the communication module and the remote device.

## Configuring EtherNet/IP Connections

### Overview

An EtherNet/IP connection provides a communication link between 2 or more devices. Properties for a single connection can be configured in the DTMs for the connected devices.

The following example presents settings for a connection between the CPU's DIO scanner service and a remote STB NIC 2212 network interface module. Configuration edits are made to the DTMs for each device.

When making DTM edits, disconnect the selected DTM from the actual module or device.

### Accessing the Connection Information

View the connection information tabs:

Step	Action
1	In Unity Pro, double-click the DTM for the CPU's DIO scanner service to access the configuration.
2	In the navigation tree, expand the <b>Device List</b> to see the associated local slave instances.
3	Expand (+) the device that corresponds to the name <b>NIC2212_01</b> .
4	Select <b>Read Input/ Write Output Data</b> to see the <b>Connection Settings</b> and <b>Connection Information</b> tabs.

### Connection Settings

Unity Pro automatically creates a connection between a communication module and remote device when the remote device is added to the Unity Pro project. Thereafter, many edits to the connection can be made in the DTM for the remote device. However, some of the connection parameters can also be configured in the DTM for the communication module, as demonstrated below.

Edit these parameters on the **Connection Settings** tab. Use settings that are appropriate to your application:

Parameter	Description
<b>Connection Bit</b>	The (read-only) offset for both the health bit and the control bit for this connection. Offset values are auto-generated by the Unity Pro DTM.
<b>Request Packet Interval (RPI)</b>	<p>The refresh period for this connection , from 2 to 65535 ms. Default = 12 ms. Type <b>30</b> ms.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.</p>

Parameter	Description
<b>Time-out Multiplier</b>	<p>This setting, multiplied against the RPI, produces a value that triggers an inactivity timeout. Setting selections include: x4, x8, x16, x32, x64, x128, x256 and x512. For this example, accept the default (<b>x4</b>).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> To view the <b>Time-out Multiplier</b> parameter, confirm that Unity Pro is operating in <b>Advanced Mode</b>.</p>
<b>Input Fallback Mode</b>	<p>The behavior of inputs in the application in the event communication is lost:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Hold Value</b> (default)</li> <li>● <b>Set To Zero</b></li> </ul> <p>For this example, accept the default.</p>

**NOTE:** The connection Information page is read-only when the CPU DTM is selected. This information needs to be set in the DTM for the remote device.

Click **OK** to save your settings.

### Configuring Connection Settings in the Remote Device DTM

Connections between the CPU's DIO scanner service and a remote device can be created and edited in the DTM for the remote device.

In this example, the following configuration edits are made to the connection that Unity Pro automatically created, when the remote device was added to the project. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

Step	Action
1	Open the DTM for the remote device (in this example <b>NIC2212_01</b> ) by selecting it in the <b>Device Editor</b> .
2	<p>Open the <b>Device Editor</b>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Use the main menu (<b>Edit</b> → <b>Open</b>) ... or ...</li> <li>● Right-click and scroll to <b>Open</b>.</li> </ul>
3	<p>In the navigation pane (on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b>), confirm that the remote device connection is of the type <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b>. To view the connection type, select <b>NIC2212_01</b> in the left pane of the <b>Device Editor</b>. If the connection type is not of the type <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b>, delete the existing connection and add a new one, as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>With the connection selected in the left pane, click the <b>Remove Connection</b> button <b>Result:</b>The existing connection is removed.</li> <li>Click the <b>Add Connection</b> button. <b>Result:</b>The <b>Select the connection to add</b> dialog opens.</li> <li>Use the scroll buttons on the drop down list to display and select the <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b> connection type.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>Select the connection to add</b> dialog. <b>Result:</b>The new connection node appears.</li> <li>Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new connection, leaving the <b>Device Editor</b> open for additional edits.</li> </ol>

## General Tab

This is the **General** tab of the DTM for the STB NIC 2212:

Group/Parameter	Value	Unit
RPI	30	ms
Input T -> O		
Input size	19	bytes
Input mode	Multicast	
Input type	Fixed	
Input priority	Scheduled	
Input trigger	Cyclic	
Output O -> T		
Output size	6	bytes
Output mode	Point to Point	
Output type	Fixed	
Output priority	Scheduled	

Description

OK Cancel Apply

Edit the settings in the **General** tab:

Parameter	Description
<b>RPI</b>	The refresh period for this connection. Accept the value of <b>30</b> ms. (This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.)
<b>Input size</b>	The number of bytes (0 ... 509) configured in the STB NIC 2212 module. For this example, enter <b>19</b> to reserve 20 bytes of input memory.
<b>Input mode</b>	Transmission type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Multicast</li> <li>● Point to Point</li> </ul> For this example, accept the default (Multicast).
<b>Input type</b>	Ethernet packet type (fixed or variable length) to be transmitted. (Only <b>Fixed</b> length packets are supported.)

Parameter	Description
Input priority	<p>The transmission priority value depends upon the device DTM. These are the available values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Low</li><li>• High</li><li>• Scheduled</li></ul> <p>For this example, accept the default selection (Scheduled).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For remote modules that support more than one priority value, you can use this setting to specify the order in which the Ethernet communication module handles packets. For more information, refer to the topic describing QoS packet prioritization.</p>
Input trigger	<p>These are the available transmission trigger values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Cyclic</li><li>• Change of state or application</li></ul> <p>For input I/O data, select <b>Cyclic</b>.</p>
Output size	<p>The number of bytes configured in the STB NIC 2212 module in increments of 4 bytes (2 words). For this example, enter <b>6</b> to reserve 8 bytes of output memory.</p>
Output mode	<p>Accept the default (<b>Point to Point</b>).</p>
Output type	<p>(Read-only). Only <b>Fixed</b> length packets are supported.</p>
Output priority	<p>Accept the default (<b>Scheduled</b>).</p>

Click **Apply** to save your settings and leave the window open.

### Identity Check Tab

Configure the **Identity Check** page to set rules for comparing the identity of the network devices (as defined by their DTM or EDS files) against the identity of the actual network device.

This is the **Identity Check** tab:

The screenshot shows a configuration window with two tabs: 'General' and 'Identity Check'. The 'Identity Check' tab is active. It contains a table with three columns: 'Parameter', 'Value', and 'Unit'. The first row in the table has a blue play button icon in the 'Parameter' column, followed by the text 'Check Identity', 'Disable' in the 'Value' column, and an empty 'Unit' column. Below the table is a text area labeled 'Description'. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Parameter	Value	Unit
▶ Check Identity	Disable	

Description

OK Cancel Apply

Use the **Check Identity** parameter to set the rules that the CPU's DIO scanner service uses to compare the configured versus the actual remote device:

- **Must match exactly:** The DTM or EDS file exactly matches the remote device.
- **Disable:** No checking occurs. The identity portion of the connection is filled with zero values (the default setting).
- **Must be compatible:** If the remote device is not the same as defined by the DTM/EDS, it emulates the DTM/EDS definitions.
- **None:** No checking occurs. The identity portion of the connection is omitted.
- **Custom:** Enable the following parameter settings, to be set individually.

Edit the settings in the **Identity Check** tab:

Parameter	Description
<b>Compatibility Mode</b>	<b>True:</b> For each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need only be compatible.
	<b>False:</b> For each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need to match exactly.
<b>Compatibility Mode</b>	Make a selection for each of these parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Compatible:</b> Include the parameter in the test.</li> <li>● <b>Not checked:</b> The parameter is not included in the test.</li> </ul>
<b>Minor Version</b>	
<b>Major Version</b>	
<b>Product Code</b>	
<b>Product Type</b>	
<b>Product Vendor</b>	

Click **OK** to save your settings and close the window open.

The next step is to configure I/O settings.

# Configuring I/O Items

## Overview

The final task in this example is to add I/O items to the configuration of the STB NIC 2212 and its 8 I/O modules. To accomplish this:

- Use the Advantys configuration software to identify the relative position of each I/O module's inputs and outputs.
- Use the Unity Pro **Device Editor** to create input and output items, defining each item's:
  - name
  - data type

## I/O Item Types and Sizes

The goal is to create a collection of input items and output items that equal the input size and output size specified for the STB NIC 2212. In this example, items need to be created for:

- 19 bytes of inputs
- 6 bytes of outputs

The Unity Pro **Device Editor** provides great flexibility in creating input and output items. You can create input and output items in groups of 1 or more single bits, 8-bit bytes, 16-bit words, 32-bit dwords, or 32-bit IEEE floating values. The number of items you create depends upon the data type and size of each item.

In the sample project, the following items were created:

- discrete bits for digital inputs and outputs
- 8-bit bytes or 16-bit words for analog inputs and outputs

## Mapping Input and Output Items

Use the **Fieldbus Image** page of the **I/O Image Overview** window in the Advantys configuration software to identify the number and type of I/O items you need to create, as follows:

Step	Action
1	In the Advantys configuration software, select <b>Island</b> → <b>I/O Image Overview</b> . The <b>I/O Image</b> window opens to the <b>Fieldbus Image</b> page.
2	Select the first cell (word 1, cell 0) in the <b>Input Data</b> table to display (in the middle of the page) a description of the cell data and its source module.
3	Make a note of the word, bit(s), module and item information for that cell.
4	Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each cell containing either an S or an integer.

**NOTE:** The Fieldbus Image presents input and output data in the form of 16-bit words (starting with word 1). You need to rearrange this data for the Unity Pro Ethernet Configuration Tool, which presents the same data in the form of 8-bit bytes (starting with byte 0).

**NOTE:** When you create items, align items of data type **WORD** and **DWORD**, as follows:



- **WORD** items: align these items on a 16-bit boundary
- **DWORD** items: align these items on a 32-bit boundary.

This process yields the following tables of input and output data:

Input Data:

Advantys Fieldbus Image		Unity Pro EIP Items		STB Module	Description
Word	Bit(s)	Byte	Bit(s)		
1	0-15	0	0-7	NIC 2212	low byte status
		1	0-7		high byte status
2	0-1	2	0-1	DDI 3230	input data
	2-3		2-3	DDI 3230	input status
	4-5		4-5	DDO 3200	output data echo
	6-7		6-7	DDO 3200	output status
	8-11	3	0-3	DDI 3420	input data
	12-15		4-7	DDI 3420	input status
3	0-3	4	0-3	DDO 3410	output data echo
	4-7		4-7	DDO 3410	output status
	8-13	5	0-5	DDI 3610	input data
	14-15		6-7	NA	not used
4	0-5	6	0-5	DDI 3610	input status
	6-7		6-7	NA	not used
	8-13	7	0-5	DDO 3600	output data echo
	14-15		6-7	NA	not used
5	0-5	8	0-5	DDO 3600	output status
	6-15	8	6-7	NA	not used
		9	0-7		
6	0-15	10	0-7	AVI 1270	input data ch 1
		11	0-7		
7	0-7	12	0-7	AVI 1270	input status ch 1
	8-15	13	0-7	NA	not used
8	0-15	14	0-7	AVI 1270	input data ch 2
		15	0-7		
9	0-7	16	0-7	AVI 1270	input status ch 2
	8-15	17	0-7	AVO 1250	output status ch 1
10	0-7	18	0-7	AVO 1250	output status ch 2
	8-15	NA	NA	NA	not used

Output Data:

Advantys Fieldbus Image		Unity Pro EIP Items		Module	Description
Word	Bit(s)	Byte	Bit(s)		
1	0-1	0	0-1	DDO 3200	output data
	2-5		2-5	DDO 3410	output data
	6-7		6-7	NA	not used
	8-13	1	0-5	DDO 3600	output data
	14-15		6-7	NA	not used
2	0-15	2	0-7	AVO 1250	output data ch 1
		3	0-7		
3	0-15	4	0-7	AVO 1250	output data ch 2
		5	0-7		

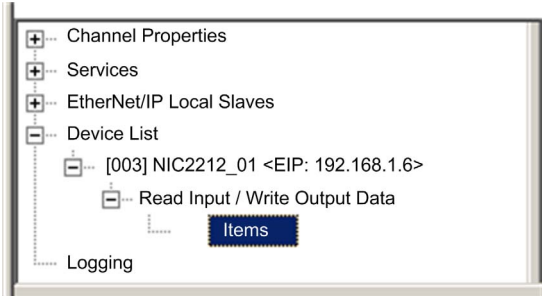
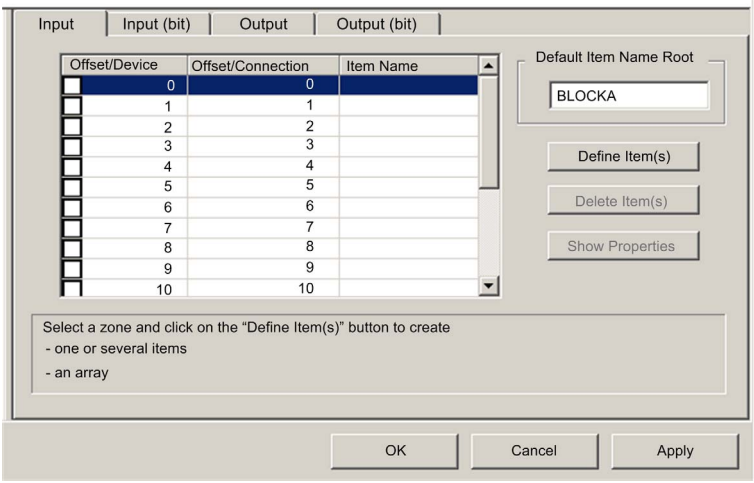
This example shows you how to create 19 bytes of inputs and 6 bytes of outputs. To efficiently use space, this example creates items in the following sequence:

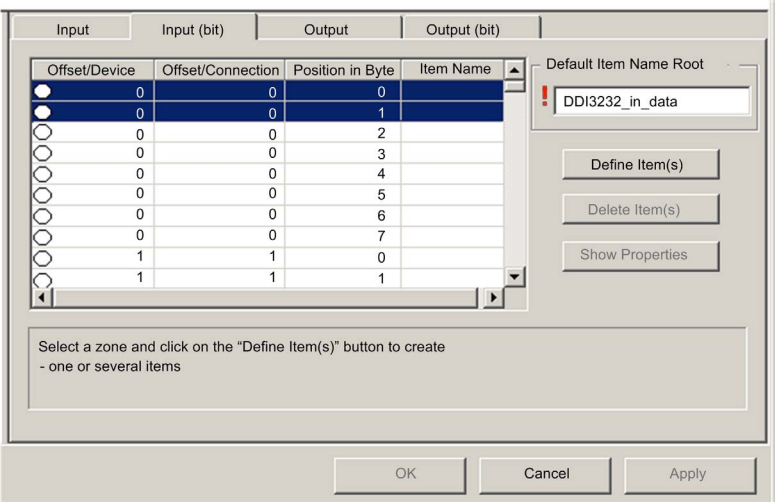
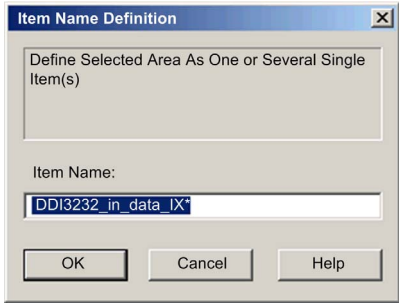
- input bit items
- input byte and word items
- output bit items
- output byte and word items

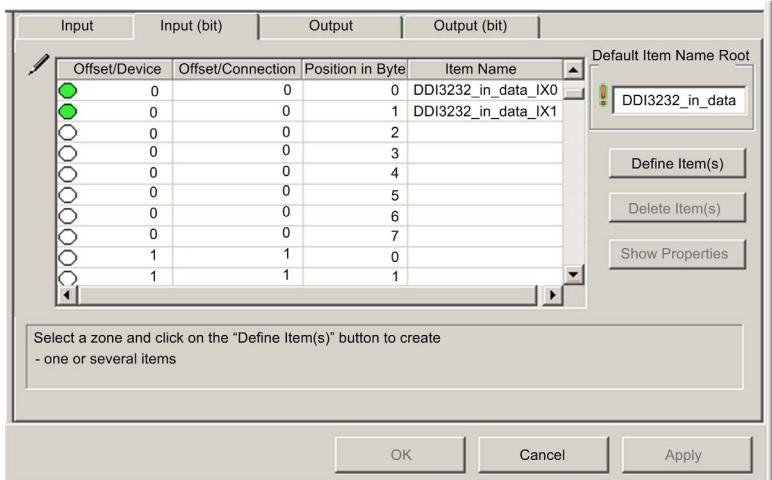
### Creating Input Bit Items

To create input bit items for the STB NIC 2212 example, beginning with 16 discrete inputs for NIC 2212 status:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the CPU DTM.
2	<p>Do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in the main menu, select <b>Edit</b> → <b>Open</b>. — or —</li> <li>• Right-click and select <b>Open</b> in the pop-up menu.</li> </ul> <p><b>Result:</b> The <b>Device Editor</b> opens, displaying the CPU DTM.</p>

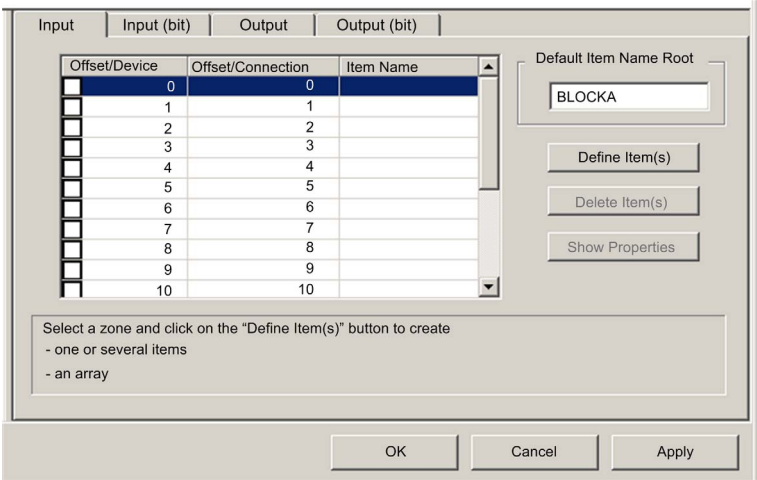
Step	Action
3	<p>In the left pane of the <b>Device Editor</b>, navigate to and select the <b>Items</b> node for the STB NIC 2212 network interface module:</p> 
4	<p>The <b>Items</b> window opens:</p> 
5	Select the <b>Input (bit)</b> tab to display that page.
6	In the <b>Input (bit)</b> page, type the following default root name (representing device status) into the <b>Default Items Name Root</b> input box type: <b>DDI3232_in_data</b> .

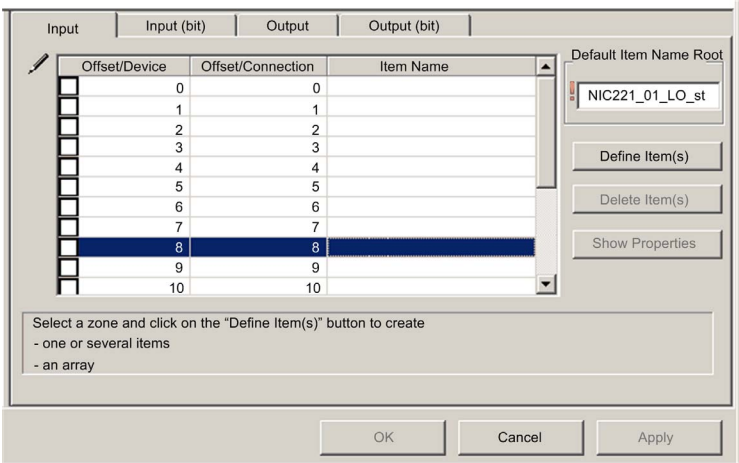
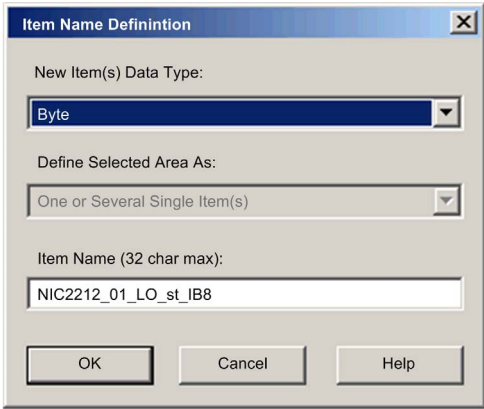
Step	Action
7	<p>In the <b>Items List</b>, select the first 2 rows in the table. (These rows represent bits 0-1 in byte.)</p> 
8	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> The asterisk (*) indicates that a series of discrete items with the same root name will be created.</p>

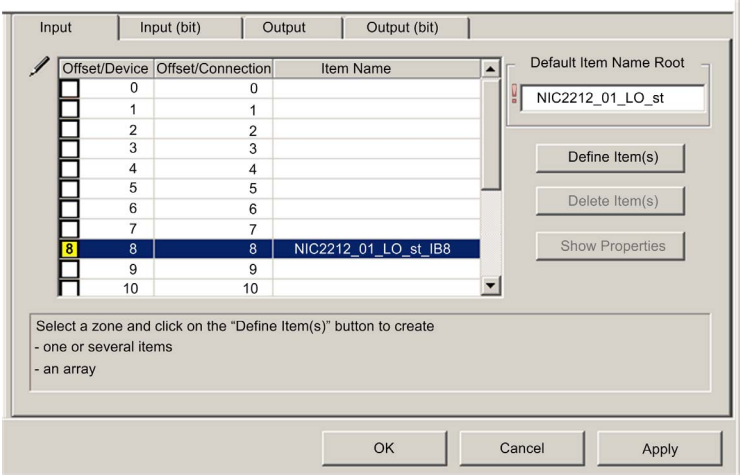
Step	Action
9	<p>Accept the default <b>Item Name</b>, and click <b>OK</b>.  <b>Result:</b> 2 discrete input items are created:</p>  <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create  - one or several items</p>
10	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the items and leave the page open.
11	<p>Repeat steps 6 - 10 for each group of discrete input items you need to create. In this example, that includes items for each of the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Byte: 0, Bits: 2-3, Default Items Name Root: DDI3230_in_st</li> <li>● Byte: 0, Bits: 4-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_echo</li> <li>● Byte: 0, Bits: 6-7, Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_st</li> <li>● Byte: 1, Bits: 0-3, Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_data</li> <li>● Byte: 1, Bits: 4-7, Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_st</li> <li>● Byte: 2, Bits: 0-3, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_echo</li> <li>● Byte: 2, Bits: 4-7, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_st</li> <li>● Byte: 3, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_data</li> <li>● Byte: 4, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_st</li> <li>● Byte: 5, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_echo</li> <li>● Byte: 6, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_st</li> </ul>
12	The next task is to create input bytes and words.

Creating Input Items

To create input items for the STB NIC 2212 example, begin with an input data byte containing low byte status for the STB NIC 2212 module:

Step	Action
1	<div>Select the <b>Input</b> tab to return to that page:</div> <div></div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> In this example, both the <b>Offset/Device</b> and <b>Offset/Connection</b> columns represent the byte address. The items you create will be either an 8-bit byte or a 16-bit word</p>

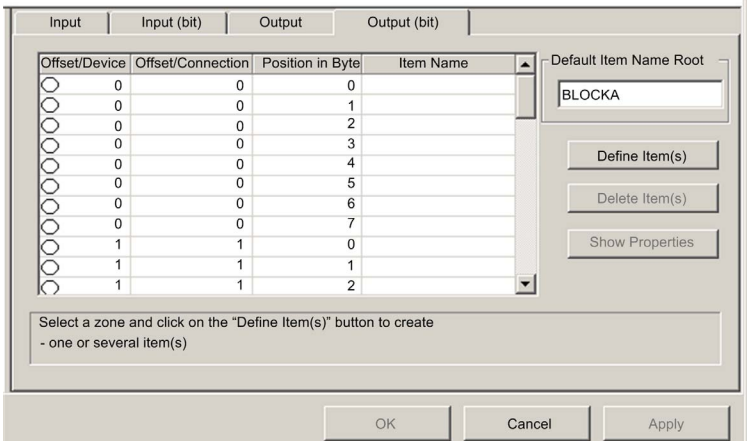
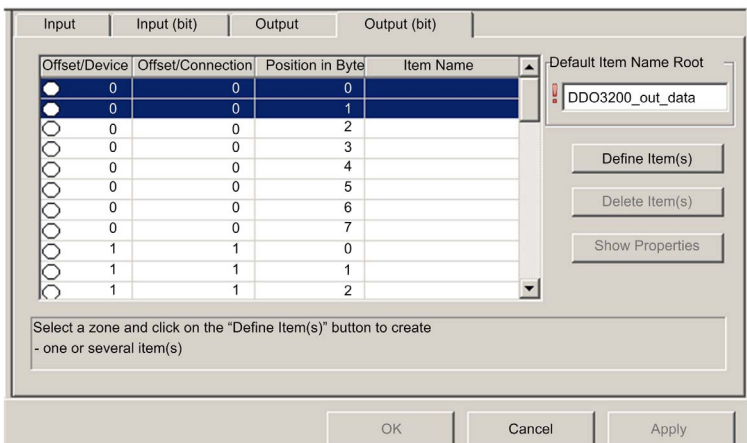
Step	Action
3	<p>Starting at the first available whole input word, select the single row at byte 8:</p> 
4	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button.  <b>Result:</b> The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p> 

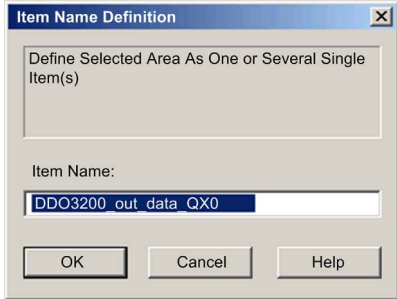
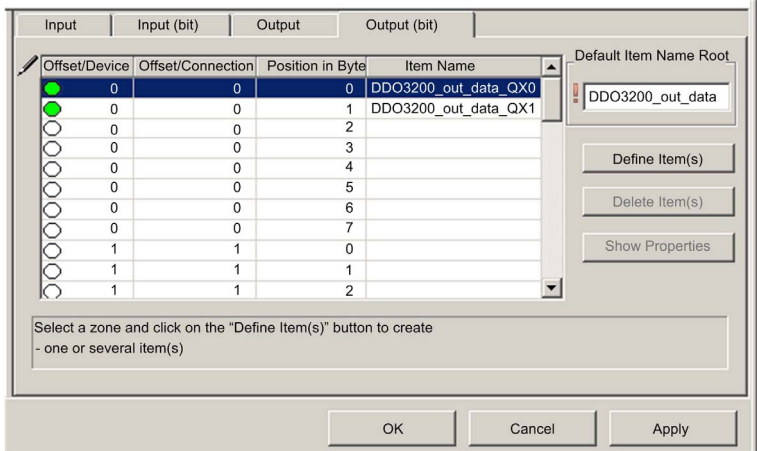
Step	Action
5	<p>Select <b>Byte</b> as the <b>New Item(s) Data Type</b>, then click <b>OK</b>.  <b>Result:</b> A new byte item is created:</p> 
6	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new items and leave the page open.
7	<p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each byte or word input item you need to create.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The number of rows you select for a new item depends upon the item type. If the item is a:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● byte: select a single row</li> <li>● word: select two rows, beginning at the next available whole word</li> </ul> <p>In this example, you will create items for each of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Byte: 9, Default Items Name Root: NIC2212_01_HI_st</li> <li>● Word: 10, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_data</li> <li>● Byte: 12, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_st</li> <li>● Word: 14-15, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_data</li> <li>● Byte: 16, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_st</li> <li>● Byte: 17, Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH1_out_st</li> <li>● Byte: 18, Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH2_out_st</li> </ul>
8	The next task is to create output bits.



## Creating Output Bit Items

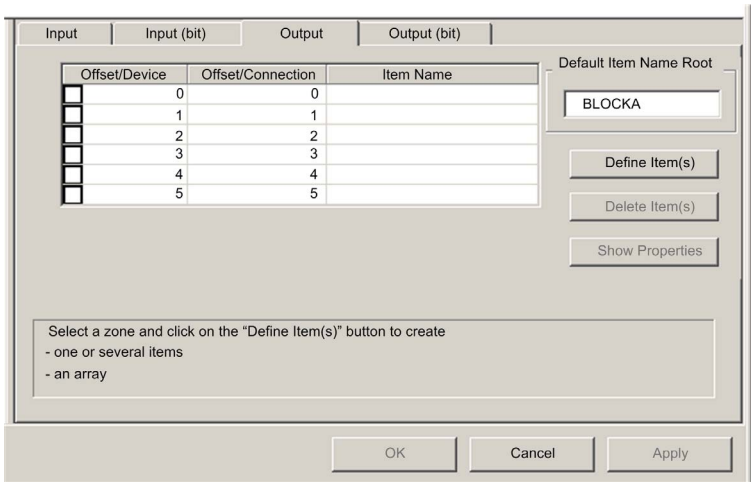
To create output bit items for the STB NIC 2212 example, beginning with 2 output bits for the STB DDO3200 module:

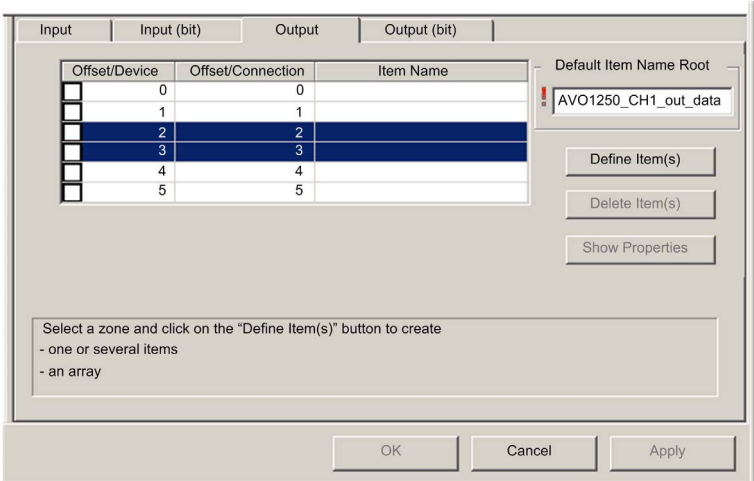
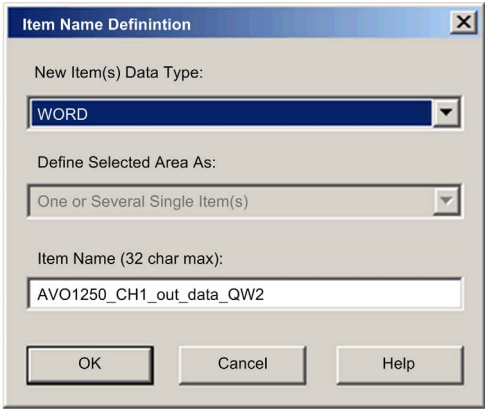
Step	Action
1	<p>Select the <b>Output (bit)</b> tab to open the following page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> Both the <b>Offset/Device</b> and <b>Offset/Connection</b> columns represent the byte address of an output, while the <b>Position in Byte</b> column indicates the bit position (within the byte) of each discrete output item.</p>
2	In the <b>Default Items Name Root</b> input box type: <b>DDO3200_out_data</b> .
3	<p>In the <b>Items List</b>, select the rows that correspond to bits 0-1 in byte 0—i.e., the first 2 rows:</p> 

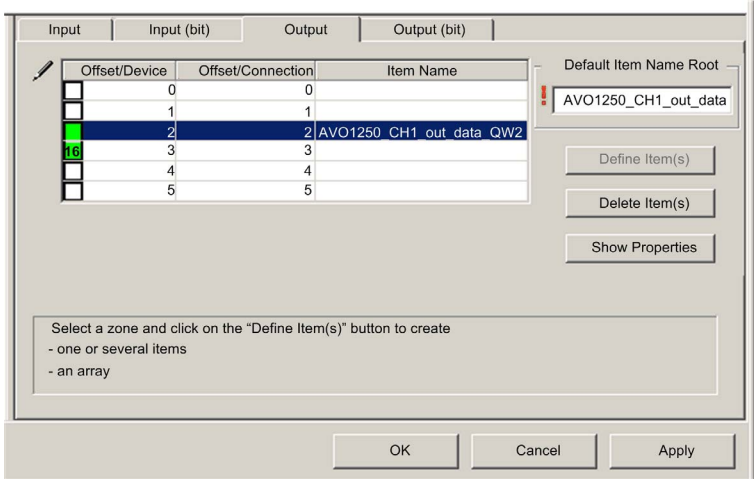
Step	Action
4	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> The asterisk (*) indicates that a series of discrete items with the same root name will be created.</p>
5	<p>Accept the default output name and click <b>OK</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> 2 discrete output items are created:</p> 
6	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new items and leave the page open.
7	<p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each group of discrete output items you need to create. In this example, that includes items for each of the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Byte: 0, Bits: 2-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_data</li> <li>● Byte: 1, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_data</li> </ul>
8	The next task is to create output bytes and words.

## Creating Numeric Output Items

To create output items for the STB NIC 2212, example, beginning with an output data word for the STB AVO 1250 module:

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the <b>Output</b> tab to open the following page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> In this example, both the <b>Offset/Device</b> and <b>Offset/Connection</b> columns represent the byte address. The items you create will be 16-bit words comprising 2 bytes.</p>
2	In the <b>Default Item Name Root</b> input box type: <b>AVO1250_CH1_out_data</b> .

Step	Action
3	<p>Starting at the next available whole word, select 2 rows: 2 and 3:</p>  <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- one or several items</li><li>- an array</li></ul>
4	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p> 

Step	Action
5	<p>Accept the default output name and click <b>OK</b>.  <b>Result:</b> The following output word item is created:</p> 
6	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new item and leave the page open.
7	Repeat steps 2 - 6 for the AVO 1250 channel 2 output data at bytes 4 and 5.
8	Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>Items</b> window.
9	Select <b>File</b> → <b>Save</b> to save your edits.

# EtherNet/IP Implicit Messaging

## Overview

The recommended RPI for EtherNet/IP implicit message connections are 1/2 of MAST cycle time. If the resulting RPI is less than 25 ms, the implicit message connections may be adversely affected when the diagnostic features of the CPU's Ethernet I/O scanner service are accessed through explicit messages or the DTM.

In this situation, these timeout multiplier settings are recommended:

RPI (ms)	Recommended Timeout Multiplier	Connection Timeout (ms)
2	64	128
5	32	160
10	16	160
20	8	160
25	4	100

**NOTE:** If you use values that are lower than those recommended in the table, the network can consume unnecessary bandwidth, which can affect the performance of the module within the system.

---

## Section 8.10

### Configuring the M580 CPU as an EtherNet/IP Adapter

---

#### Introduction

This section describes the configuration of an M580 CPU as an EtherNet/IP adapter using *local slave* functionality.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Introducing the Local Slave	256
Local Slave Configuration Example	258
Enabling Local Slaves	259
Accessing Local Slaves with a Scanner	260
Local Slave Parameters	262
Working with Derived Data Type Variables	266

# Introducing the Local Slave

## Introduction

The M580 CPU's embedded Ethernet I/O scanner service scans network modules. However, you can enable the CPU's scanner service as an EtherNet/IP adapter (or local slave). When the local slave functionality is enabled, network scanners can access CPU data that is mapped to local slave assembly objects in the CPU program.

**NOTE:** The CPU's scanner service continues to function as a scanner when it is enabled as an EtherNet/IP adapter.

The CPU's scanner service supports up to 16 instances of local slaves (Local Slave 1 ... Local Slave 3). Each enabled local slave instance supports these connections:

- one exclusive owner connection
- one listen-only connection

## Process Overview

These are the steps in the local slave configuration process:

Stage	Description
1	Enable and configure the CPU's scanner service as a local slave.
2	Configure local slave instances in the scanner service. (Local slave instances correspond to each enabled local slave that is scanned.)
3	Specify the size of local slave input and output assemblies in the scanner service. (Use sizes that match the input and output sizes of the enabled local slave <a href="#">(see page 147)</a> .)

## Implicit and Explicit Messaging

In its role as an EtherNet/IP adapter, the CPU scanner services responds to these requests from network scanners:

- **implicit messages:** Implicit messaging requests are sent from a network scanner device to the CPU. When the local slave functionality is enabled, network scanners can perform these tasks:
  - read messages from the CPU's scanner service
  - write messages to the CPU's scanner service

Implicit messaging is especially suited to the exchange of peer-to-peer data at a repetitive rate.

- **explicit messages:** The CPU's scanner service responds to explicit messaging requests that are directed to CIP objects. When local slaves are enabled by the CPU, explicit messaging requests can access the CPU's scanner service CIP assembly instances.



### Third-Party Devices

If the CPU's scanner service that communicates with the local slave can be configured using Unity Pro, use DTMs that correspond to the CPU to add those modules to your configuration.

Third-party EtherNet/IP scanners that access the local slave assembly instances through the CPU's scanner service do so with respect to the assembly mapping table. The CPU's scanner service is delivered with its corresponding EDS file. Third-party scanners can use the contents of the EDS file to map inputs and outputs to the appropriate assembly instances of the CPU's scanner service.

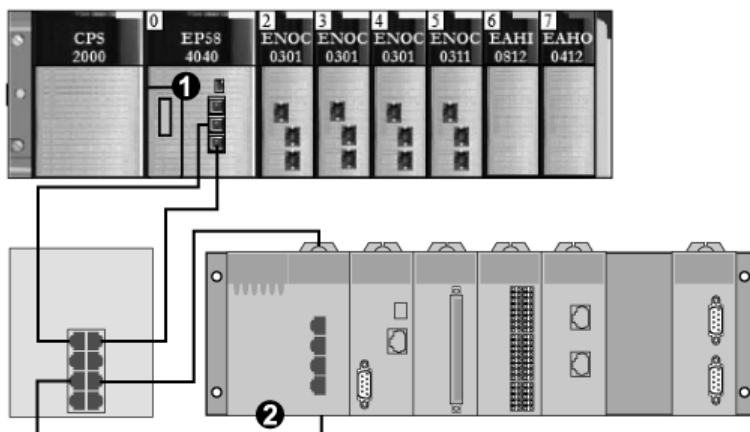
## Local Slave Configuration Example

### Introduction

Use these instructions to create a simple local slave configuration that includes a network scanner (originator, **O**) and an M580 CPU that is enabled as a local slave (target, **T**).

### Originator and Target Devices

This figure, which is a subset of the sample network, shows the enabled local slave (1) and the master device (2):



- 1 M580 CPU: The CPU on the M580 local rack. In this example, you will enable this CPU's embedded scanner service as a local slave device (or target, **T**).
- 2 Modicon M340 rack: In this example, the scanner (or originator, **O**) on this rack scans the CPU data on the M580 rack through the enabled local slave (M580 CPU's scanner service).

## Enabling Local Slaves

### Introduction

In a sample configuration, you will enable **Local Slave 1** and **Local Slave 2**.

First, use these instructions to enable **Local Slave 1** in the CPU's embedded scanner service configuration. At the end of this exercise, repeat these instructions to enable **Local Slave 2**.

### Enabling a Local Slave

Enable the CPU in the M580 local rack as a target device (local slave):

Step	Action
1	Open a Modicon M580 Unity Pro project.
2	On the <b>General</b> tab, assign this <b>Alias name</b> to the CPU: BMEP58_ECPU.
3	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ), double-click the DTM that corresponds to the alias name of the BME NOC 0301 module to open the configuration window.
4	In the navigation pane, expand (+) <b>EtherNet/IP Local Slaves</b> to see the 16 available local slaves.
5	Select a local slave to see its properties. (For this example, select <b>Local Slave 1</b> .)
6	In the drop-down list ( <b>Properties</b> → <b>Active Configuration</b> ), scroll to <b>Enabled</b> .
7	Click <b>Apply</b> to enable <b>Local Slave 1</b> .
8	Click <b>OK</b> to apply the changes and close the configuration window.

You now have enabled **Local Slave 1** for the CPU's scanner service at IP address 192.168.20.10.

EtherNet/IP scanners that scan the network for the CPU's scanner service at that IP address can use implicit messages to read from and write to the assembly instances that are associated with the local slave instance.

### Enabling Another Local Slave

This example uses two local slave connections. Make a second connection for **Local Slave 2**:

Step	Action
1	Repeat the steps above to enable a second local slave ( <b>Local Slave 2</b> ).  <b>NOTE:</b> The appropriate IP address for this example (192.168.20.10) was already assigned to the CPU's scanner service in the assignment of <b>Local Slave 1</b> .
2	Continue to the next procedure to configure the network scanner (originator, <b>O</b> ).

## Accessing Local Slaves with a Scanner

### Introduction

Use these instructions to map local slave instances in a network scanner to the enabled local slaves in the CPU's embedded scanner service (**Local Slave 1**, **Local Slave 2**, **Local Slave 3**).

This example uses a BME NOC 0301 Ethernet communication module as a network scanner (originator, **O**) that scans the CPU scanner service when it is enabled as a local slave (target, **T**).

Configure the BME NOC 0301 module in an M580 Unity Pro project.

### Adding the Device DTM

Create a local slave instance that corresponds to an enabled local slave by name:

Step	Action
1	Open an M580 Unity Pro project that includes a BME NOC 0301 Ethernet communication module.
2	Right-click the BME NOC 0301 module in the <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ) and select <b>Add</b> .
3	Select the DTM that corresponds to the CPU. <b>NOTE:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The DTM used in this example corresponds to the CPU's scanner service. For other target devices, use the DTM from the manufacturer that corresponds to your scanner device.</li><li>• The corresponding input I/O vision and output I/O vision variables are automatically created with the respective suffixes <b>_IN</b> and <b>_OUT</b>.</li></ul>
4	Press the <b>Add DTM</b> button to open the <b>Properties of device</b> dialog window.
5	Assign a context-sensitive <b>Alias name</b> that corresponds to <b>Local Slave 1</b> for the CPU. <b>Example:</b> BMEP58_ECPU_from_EDS_LS1
6	Click <b>OK</b> to see the local slave instance in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .

### Mapping Local Slave Numbers

In the M580 Unity Pro project, associate the local slave instances in the BME NOC 0301 scanner with specific local slaves that are enabled for the CPU's scanner service:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , double-click the local slave instance that corresponds to <b>Local Slave 1</b> in the CPU target device (BMEP58_ECPU_from_EDS_LS1). <b>NOTE:</b> The default connection is <b>Local Slave 1 - Exclusive Owner</b> , which is most applicable to <b>Local Slave 1</b> in the target device.
2	Select <b>Local Slave 1 - Exclusive Owner</b> .
3	Click <b>Remove Connection</b> to delete the connection to <b>Local Slave 1</b> .
4	Click <b>Add Connection</b> to open the dialog box ( <b>Select connection to add</b> ).

Step	Action
5	Select <b>Local Slave 4 - Exclusive Owner</b> .
6	Click <b>Apply</b> .

The local slave (**Local Slave 1**) is now the target of a local slave instance with a context-sensitive connection name (**Local Slave 1 - Exclusive Owner**).

### Mapping IP Addresses

Associate the IP address of the local slave (target, **T**) with the local slave instances in the scanner (originator, **O**) configuration:

Step	Action
1	Double-click the BME NOC 0301 module in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
2	In the navigation pane, expand the <b>Device List</b> .
3	Select a local slave instance (BMEP58_ECPU_from_EDS_LS1).
4	Select the <b>Address Setting</b> tab.
5	In the <b>IP Address</b> field, enter the IP address of the local slave device (192.168.20.10).
6	Click inside the navigation pane to make the <b>Apply</b> button active. <b>NOTE:</b> You may have to select <b>Disabled</b> in the drop-down menu ( <b>DHCP for this device</b> ) to activate the <b>OK</b> and <b>Apply</b> buttons.
7	Configure the data size.
8	Click <b>Apply</b> .

### Configuring an Additional Connection

You have created one local slave instance that corresponds by name and IP address to an enabled local slave. This example uses two local slave connections, so make another connection for **Local Slave 2**.

Step	Action
1	Repeat the preceeding steps ( <a href="#">see page 261</a> ) to create a second local slave instance that corresponds to <b>Local Slave 2</b> .
2	Build the Unity Pro project.

### Accessing the Device DDT Variables

Step	Action
1	In the Project Browser ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>Project Browser</b> ), expand <b>Variables &amp; FB instances</b> .
2	Double-click <b>Device DDT Variables</b> to see the device DDTs that correspond with the CPU's scanner service.

## Local Slave Parameters

### Accessing the Configuration

Open the **EtherNet/IP Local Slaves** configuration page:

Step	Action
1	Open the Unity Pro project.
2	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
3	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , double-click the CPU DTM to open the configuration window. <b>NOTE:</b> You can also right-click the CPU DTM and select <b>Open</b> .
4	Expand (+) <b>Device List</b> in the navigation tree to see the local slave instances.
5	Select the local slave instance to view the <b>Properties</b> and <b>Assembly</b> configuration tabs.

### Properties

Identify and enable (or disable) the local slave on the **Properties** tab:

Parameter	Description	
<b>Number</b>	The Unity Pro DTM assigns a unique identifier (number) to the device. These are the default values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <i>local slave 1</i>: 112</li> <li>● <i>local slave 2</i>: 113</li> <li>● <i>local slave 3</i>: 114</li> <li>● ...</li> <li>● <i>local slave 16</i>: 127</li> </ul>	
<b>Active Configuration</b>	Enabled	Enable the local slave with the configuration information in the <b>Assembly</b> fields when the CPU scanner service is an adapter for the local slave node.
	Disabled	Disable and deactivate the local slave. Retain the current local slave settings.
<b>Comment</b>	Enter an optional comment (maximum: 80 characters).	
<b>Connection Bit</b>	The connection bit is represented by an integer (257... 272). <b>NOTE:</b> This setting is auto-generated after the local slave settings are input and the network configuration is saved.	

### Assembly

Use the **Assembly** area of the **Local Slave** page to configure the size of the local slave inputs and outputs. Each device is associated with these assembly instances:

- Outputs
- Inputs
- Configuration
- Heartbeat (The heartbeat assembly instance is for listen-only connections only.)

The Unity Pro assembly numbers are fixed according to this table, where **O** indicates the originator (scanner) device and **T** indicates the target device:

Local Slave	Number		Connection
	Device	Assembly	
1	112	101	Outputs (T->O)
		102	Inputs (O->T)
		103	Configuration Size
		199	Heartbeat
2	113	111	Outputs (T->O)
		112	Inputs (O->T)
		113	Configuration Size
		200	Heartbeat
3	114	121	Outputs (T->O)
		122	Inputs (O->T)
		123	Configuration Size
		201	Heartbeat
4	115	131	Outputs (T->O)
		132	Inputs (O->T)
		133	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
5	116	136	Outputs (T->O)
		137	Inputs (O->T)
		138	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
6	117	141	Outputs (T->O)
		142	Inputs (O->T)
		143	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
7	118	146	Outputs (T->O)
		147	Inputs (O->T)
		148	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat

Local Slave	Number		Connection
	Device	Assembly	
8	119	151	Outputs (T->O)
		152	Inputs (O->T)
		153	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
9	120	156	Outputs (T->O)
		157	Inputs (O->T)
		158	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
10	121	161	Outputs (T->O)
		162	Inputs (O->T)
		163	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
11	122	166	Outputs (T->O)
		167	Inputs (O->T)
		168	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
12	123	171	Outputs (T->O)
		172	Inputs (O->T)
		173	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
13	124	176	Outputs (T->O)
		177	Inputs (O->T)
		178	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
14	125	181	Outputs (T->O)
		182	Inputs (O->T)
		183	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat
15	126	186	Outputs (T->O)
		187	Inputs (O->T)
		188	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat



Local Slave	Number		Connection
	Device	Assembly	
16	127	191	Outputs (T->O)
		192	Inputs (O->T)
		193	Configuration Size
		202	Heartbeat

**NOTE:** When using explicit messaging to read the CPU's scanner service assembly instance, allocate sufficient room for the response. The size of the response equals the sum of: assembly size + 1 byte (Reply service) + 1 byte (General Status).

Limitations (from the perspective of the local slave):

- *maximum RPI value:* 65535 ms
- *maximum timeout value:* 512 \* RPI
- *outputs (T->O):* 509 bytes maximum
- *inputs (O->T):* 505 bytes maximum
- *configuration for the CPU scanner service:* 0 (fixed)

## Working with Derived Data Type Variables

### Introduction

Use Unity Pro to create a collection of DDDTs and variables that support communications and the transfer of data between the PAC and the various local slaves, distributed devices, and corresponding I/O items.

You can create device derived data types (DDDTs) and corresponding variables in the Unity Pro DTM. Those program objects support your network design.

Use the device DDT in the Unity Pro DTM for these tasks:

- Read status information from the Ethernet communications module.
- Write control instructions to the Ethernet communications module.

You can double-click the name of the device DDT in the **Project Browser** at any time to view its properties and open the corresponding EDS file.

**NOTE:** For applications that require multiple device DDTs, create an **Alias name** that logically identifies the DDDT with the configuration (module, slot, local slave number, etc.).

### Derived Data Type Variables

You can access the device DDTs and the corresponding variables in Unity Pro and add them to a user-defined **Animation Table**. Use that table to monitor read-only variables and edit read-write variables.

Use these data types and variables to perform these tasks:

- Read the status of connections and communications between the Ethernet communications module and distributed EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP devices:
  - The status is displayed in the form of a HEALTH\_BITS array consisting of 32 bytes.
  - A bit value of 0 indicates the connection is lost or the communication module can no longer communicate with the distributed device.
- Toggle a connection ON (1) or OFF (0) by writing to a selected bit in a 16-word DIO\_CONTROL array
- Monitor the value of local slave and distributed device input and output items that you created in Unity Pro.

### Displaying the Order of Input and Output Items

In the **Project Browser**, view the DDDTs.

The **Data Editor** displays each input and output variable. When you open the first input and output variables, you can see both the connection health bits (DEVICE\_CNX\_HEALTH) and the connection control (DIO\_CTRL) bits.

This table shows the rule assignment for connection numbers:

Inputs	Order	Outputs
Health bits (note 1)	1	Control bits (note 1)
Modbus TCP input variables (note 2)	2	Modbus TCP output variables (note 2)
Local Slave input variables (note 3)	3	Local Slave output variables (note 3)
EtherNet/IP input variables (note 2)	4	EtherNet/IP output variables (note 2)
<p><b>NOTE 1:</b> Health and control bits are in this format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● i. By device type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● a. Modbus TCP</li> <li>● b. local slave</li> <li>● c. EtherNet/IP</li> </ul> </li> <li>● ii. Within each device type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● a. by device or local slave number</li> <li>● b. within a device (by connection number)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE 2:</b> Device variables are in this format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● i. by device number</li> <li>● ii. within a device (by connection number)</li> <li>● iii. within a connection (by item offset)</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE 3:</b> Local slave variables are in this format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● i. by local slave number</li> <li>● ii. within each local slave (by item offset)</li> </ul>		

# Section 8.11

## Hardware Catalog

---

### Introduction

The Unity Pro **Hardware Catalog** displays the modules and devices that you can add to a Unity Pro project. Each module or device in the catalog is represented by a DTM that defines its parameters.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Introduction to the Hardware Catalog	269
Adding a DTM to the Unity Pro Hardware Catalog	270
Adding an EDS File to the Hardware Catalog	271
Updating the Hardware Catalog	274
Removing an EDS File from the Hardware Catalog	275

## Introduction to the Hardware Catalog

### Introduction

The Unity Pro **Hardware Catalog** contains a list of modules and devices that you can add to a Unity Pro project. EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP devices are located in the **DTM Catalog** tab at the bottom of the **Hardware Catalog**. Each module or device in the catalog is represented by a DTM that defines its parameters.

### EDS Files

Not all devices in today's market offer device-specific DTMs. Some devices are defined by device-specific EDS files. Unity Pro displays EDS files in the form of a DTM. In this way, you can use Unity Pro to configure devices that are defined by an EDS file in the same way you would configure a device defined by its DTM.

Other devices lack both a DTM and an EDS file. Configure those devices by using the generic DTM on the **DTM Catalog** page.

### View the Hardware Catalog

Open the Unity Pro **Hardware Catalog**:

Step	Action
1	Open Unity Pro.
2	Find the <b>PLC bus</b> in the <b>Project Browser</b> .
3	Use one method to open the catalog: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Use the pull-down menu (<b>Tools</b> → <b>Hardware Catalog</b>).</li><li>● Double-click an empty slot in the <b>PLC bus</b>.</li></ul>

## Adding a DTM to the Unity Pro Hardware Catalog

### A Manufacturer-Defined Process

Before a DTM can be used by the Unity Pro **Hardware Catalog**, install the DTM on the host PC (the PC that is running Unity Pro).

The installation process for the DTM is defined by the device manufacturer. Consult the documentation from the device manufacturer to install a device DTM on your PC.

**NOTE:** After a device DTM is successfully installed on your PC, update the Unity Pro Hardware Catalog ([see page 274](#)) to see the new DTM in the catalog. The DTM can then be added to a Unity Pro project.

## Adding an EDS File to the Hardware Catalog

### Introduction

You may want to use an EtherNet/IP device for which no DTM is in the catalog. In that case, use these instructions to import the EDS files into the catalog to create a corresponding DTM.

Unity Pro includes a wizard you can use to add one or more EDS files to the Unity Pro **Hardware Catalog**. The wizard presents instruction screens to execute these commands:

- Simplify the addition of EDS files to the **Hardware Catalog**.
- Provide a redundancy check when you add duplicate EDS files to the **Hardware Catalog**.

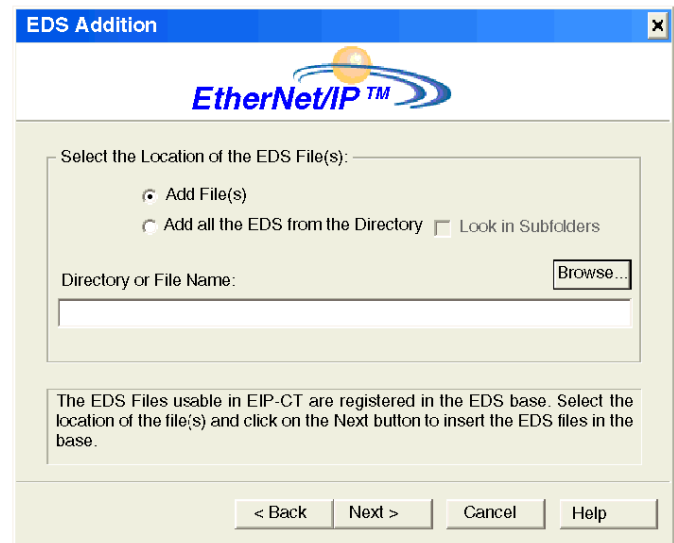
**NOTE:** The Unity Pro **Hardware Catalog** displays a partial collection of DTMs and EDS files that are registered with the ODVA. This library includes DTMs and EDS files for products that are not manufactured or sold by Schneider Electric. The non-Schneider Electric EDS files are identified by vendor in the catalog. Please contact the identified device's manufacturer for inquiries regarding the corresponding non-Schneider Electric EDS files.

### Adding EDS Files

Open the **EDS Addition** dialog box:

Step	Action
1	Open a Unity Pro project that includes an Ethernet communication module.
2	Open the <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
3	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select a communication module.
4	Right-click on the communication module and scroll to <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Additional functions</b> → <b>Add EDS to library</b> .
5	In the <b>EDS Addition</b> window, click <b>Next</b> .




You can now see this page:



Add one or more EDS files to the library:

Step	Action
1	Use these commands in the <b>Select the Location of the EDS File(s)</b> area of the <b>EDS Addition</b> dialog box to identify the location of the EDS files: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Add File(s)</b>: Add one or more EDS files that are individually selected.</li> <li>● <b>Add all the EDS from the Directory</b>: Add all files from a selected folder. (Check <b>Look in Subfolders</b> to add EDS files from the folders within the selected folder.)</li> </ul>
2	Click <b>Browse</b> to open a navigation dialog box.
3	Select the location of the EDS file(s): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Navigate to at least one EDS file.</li> <li>● Navigate to a folder that contains EDS files.</li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> Keep the location selected (highlighted).
4	Click <b>Select</b> to close the navigation window. <b>NOTE:</b> Your selection appears in the <b>Directory or File Name</b> field.
5	Click <b>Next</b> to compare the selected EDS files to the files in the library. <b>NOTE:</b> If one or more selected EDS files is a duplicate, a <b>File Already Exists</b> message appears. Click <b>Close</b> to hide the message.



Step	Action
6	<p>The next page of the <b>EDS Addition</b> wizard opens. It indicates the status of each device you attempted to add:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● check mark  (green): The EDS file can be added.</li><li>● informational icon  (blue): There is a redundant file.</li><li>● exclamation point  (red): There is an invalid EDS file.</li></ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You can click <b>View Selected File</b> to open and view the selected file.</p>
7	<p>Click <b>Next</b> to add the non-duplicate files.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The next page of the <b>EDS Addition</b> wizard opens to indicate that the action is complete.</p>
8	<p>Click <b>Finish</b> to close the wizard.</p>

## Updating the Hardware Catalog

### Updating Hardware Catalog

After you have followed the manufacturer's instructions and installed a module or device DTM on your PC, update the Unity Pro **Hardware Catalog**. Updating this catalog makes the new Ethernet module or device available for addition to your Unity Pro application.

Update the **Hardware Catalog**:

Step	Action
1	Open the Unity Pro <b>Hardware Catalog</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>Hardware Catalog</b> ).
2	At the bottom of the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> pane, select the <b>DTM Catalog</b> tab to display a module and device DTM list. <b>NOTE:</b> When you initially install the software, there are no devices in the catalog.
3	Click <b>Update</b> to open the <b>FDT/DTM Catalog</b> window.
4	Press <b>Yes</b> at the prompt to update the catalog. <b>NOTE:</b> The window refreshes itself, as indicated by the progress bar in the lower right corner of the window.

## Removing an EDS File from the Hardware Catalog

### Introduction

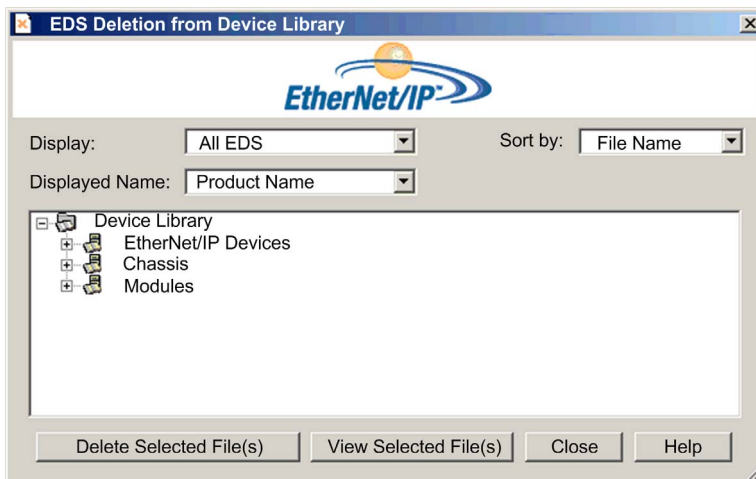
You can remove a module or device from the list of available devices in the Unity Pro **Hardware Catalog** by removing its **EDS** file from the library.

When you remove an EDS file from the library, the device or module disappears from the **DTM Catalog**. However, removing the file from the library does not delete the file from its stored location, so you can import the file again later.

### Removing an EDS File from the Catalog

Use these steps to remove an EDS file from the catalog:

Step	Action
1	Open the Unity Pro <b>DTM Browser</b> ( <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> ).
2	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select an Ethernet communication module.
3	Right-click the module and scroll to <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Additional functions</b> → <b>Remove EDS from library</b> to open the <b>EDS Deletion from Device Library</b> window:



Step	Action	
4	Use the selection lists in the heading of this window to specify how EDS files are displayed:	
	<b>Display</b>	Choose criteria to filter the list of EDS files: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>All EDS</b> (no filtering)</li><li>● <b>Only Devices</b></li><li>● <b>Only Chassis</b></li><li>● <b>Only Modules</b></li></ul>
	<b>Sort by</b>	Choose criteria to sort the list of displayed EDS files: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>File Name</b></li><li>● <b>Manufacturer</b></li><li>● <b>Category</b></li><li>● <b>Device Name</b></li></ul>
	<b>Displayed Name</b>	Choose the identifier for each device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>Catalog Name</b></li><li>● <b>Product Name</b></li></ul>
5	Expand (+) the <b>Device Library</b> navigation tree and select the EDS file you want to remove. <b>NOTE:</b> Click <b>View Selected File</b> to see the read-only contents of the selected EDS file.	
6	Click the <b>Delete Selected File(s)</b> button to open the <b>DeleteEDS</b> dialog box.	
7	Click <b>Yes</b> to remove the selected EDS file from the list.	
8	Repeat these steps for each EDS file you want to delete.	
9	Click <b>Close</b> .	

---

## Section 8.12

### M580 CPU Embedded Web Pages

---

#### Introduction

The M580 CPU includes a Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) server. The server transmits web pages for the purpose of monitoring, diagnosing, and controlling remote access to the communication module. The server provides easy access to the CPU from standard internet browsers.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Introducing the Embedded Web Pages	278
CPU Diagnostic Web Pages	279
Status Summary	281
Performance	283
Port Statistics	285
I/O Scanner	286
Messaging	288
QoS	289
Network Time Service	290
Redundancy	292
Alarm Viewer	293

## Introducing the Embedded Web Pages

### Introduction

Use the embedded web server pages to:

- display real-time diagnostic data for both the M580 CPU and other networked devices
- read the values of and write values to Unity Pro application variables
- manage and control access to the embedded web pages by assigning separate passwords for:
  - viewing the diagnostic web pages
  - using the Data Editor to write values to Unity Pro application variables

### Requirements

The embedded web server in the M580 CPUs displays data in standard HTML web pages. Access the embedded web pages on a PC, iPad, or Android tablet with these browsers:

- Internet Explorer (v8 or later)
- Google Chrome (v11 or later)
- Mozilla Firefox (v4 or later)
- Safari (v5.1.7 or later)

## CPU Diagnostic Web Pages

### Accessing the Web Site

Access the **Diagnostic** tab:

Step	Action
1	Open an Internet browser.
2	In the address bar, enter the IP address of the M580 CPU ( <i>see page 156</i> ).
3	Press <b>Enter</b> and wait for the <b>Home</b> page to open.

### Navigating the Web Pages

Click the **Diagnostic** tab to navigate through the diagnostic web pages:

English | Help

M580 BME P58 ....

Home Diagnostic

Menu < Please select a menu item

- Module
  - Summary
  - Performance
  - Port Statistics
- Connected Devices
  - Scanner Status
  - Messaging
- Services
  - QoS
  - NTP
  - Redundancy
- System
  - Alarm Viewer

Waveform icon

Access these pages by expanding the **Menu** on the **Diagnostic** tab:

- **Status Summary** (*see page 281*)
- **Performance** (*see page 283*)
- **Port Statistics** (*see page 285*)
- **I/O Scanner** (*see page 286*)
- **Messaging** (*see page 288*)
- **QoS** (*see page 289*)
- **Network Time Service** (*see page 290*)
- **Redundancy** (*see page 292*)





## Status Summary






### Open the Page

Access the **Status Summary** page on the **Diagnostics** tab (**Menu →Module →Summary**):

### Status Summary

 <b>RUN</b>	<b>ERR</b>	<b>I/O</b>	<b>CARD_ERR</b>
<b>MOD STATUS</b>		<b>CARD_ACT</b>	
	 <b>NETWORK STATUS</b>		

#### Service Status

 DHCP Server	<b>Unknown</b>
 FDR Server	<b>Unknown</b>
 Access Control	<b>Unknown</b>
 <u>Scanner Status</u>	<b>Unknown</b>
 <u>NTP Status</u>	<b>Unknown</b>

#### Version Info.

Exec. Version	<b>0.4</b>
Kernel Version	<b>0.0</b>
Web Server Version	<b>1.0</b>
Web Site Version	<b>1.1.0.0</b>
CIP Version	<b>1.0</b>

#### CPU Summary

Model	<b>M580 CPU</b>
State	<b>RUN</b>
Scan Time	<b>2ms</b>
Logged In	<b>No</b>
CPU Exec. Version	<b>4.01</b>
Unity Program	<b>NO PROG</b>

#### Network Info.

IP Address	<b>192.168.10.1</b>
Subnet Address	<b>255.255.0.0</b>
Gateway Address	<b>0.0.0.0</b>
MAC Address	<b>00 11 00 13 80 10</b>
Host Name	<b>FAILED</b>

**NOTE:** This page is updated every 5 seconds.

**Diagnostic Information**

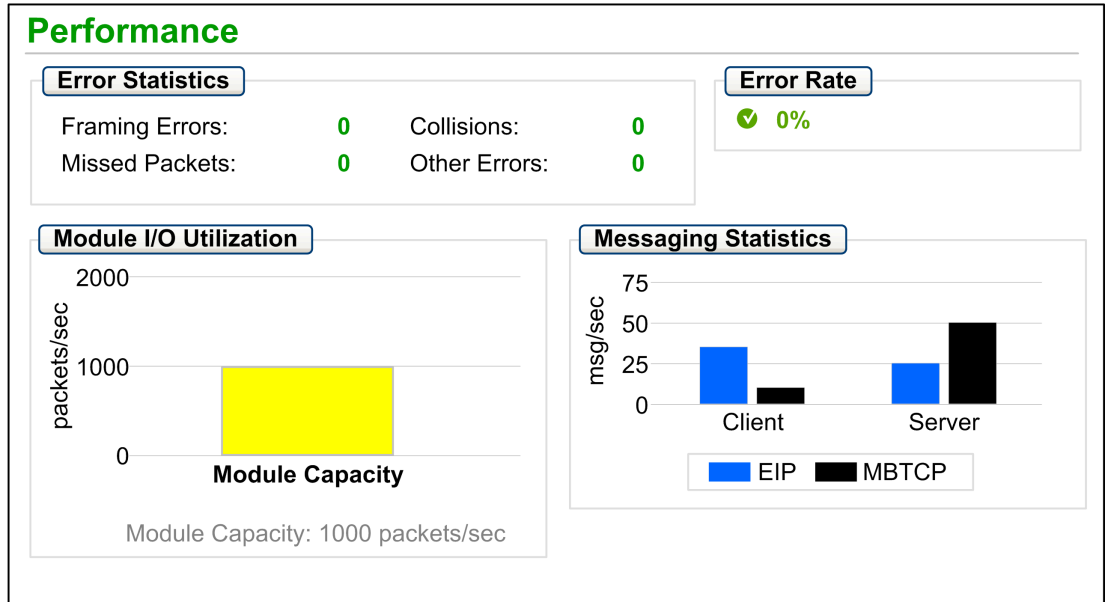
The objects on this page provide status information:

Parameters	Description	
LEDs	The black field contains LED indicators ( <b>RUN</b> , <b>ERR</b> , etc.). <b>NOTE:</b> The diagnostics information associated with the LED activity is described elsewhere ( <a href="#">see page 33</a> ).	
<b>Service Status</b>	green	The available service is operational and running.
	red	An error is detected in an available service.
	black	The available service is not present or not configured.
<b>Version Info.</b>	This field describes the software versions that are running on the CPU.	
<b>CPU Summary</b>	This field describes the CPU hardware and the applications that are running on the CPU.	
<b>Network Info.</b>	This field contains network and hardware address information and connectivity that corresponds to the CPU.	

## Performance

### Open the Page

Access the **Performance** page from the **Diagnostics** tab (**Menu** → **Module** → **Performance**):



**NOTE:** This page is updated every 5 seconds.

### Diagnostic Information

This table describes the performance statistics:

Field	Description
<b>Error Statistics</b>	This area contains the detected errors in the diagnostics data for the CPU. (Reset these counters to 0 with the <b>Reset Counters</b> button.)
<b>Error Rate</b>	This percentage represents the total number of packets divided by the number of packets that are not associated with detected errors.
<b>Total Bandwidth Utilization</b>	This value indicates the percentage of the available bandwidth that the CPU is using.
<b>Module I/O Utilization</b>	This graph shows the total number of packets (per second) the CPU can handle at once. (See the note below.)
<b>Processor Utilization</b>	This value represents the limit for processor use (as a percentage of the total capacity of the CPU).

Field	Description
<b>Messaging Statistics</b>	This graph shows the number of Modbus/TCP or EtherNet/IP ( <i>see page 323</i> ) messages per second for the client or server. (See the note below.)
<b>System Bandwidth Monitor</b>	These graphs show the percentage of bandwidth consumed by the Modbus messaging and I/O scanning services. (See the note below.)
<b>NOTE:</b> Move the mouse over the dynamic graphs to see the current numeric values.	

## Port Statistics

### Open the Page

Access the **Port Statistics** page from the **Diagnostics** tab (**Menu** → **Module** → **Port Statistics**):

Port Statistics					
	Internal Port	Port 1	Port 2	Port 3	Port 4
Speed	100 Mbps	10 Mbps	0 Mbps	0 Mbps	0 Mbps
Duplex	TP-Full	TP-Half	TP-Half	TP-Half	TP-Half
Bandwidth Usage					
Redundancy Status	Unsupported	Unsupported	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Transmission Success Rate	100.00%	100.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
Total Errors	0	150	0	0	0
<b>Reset Counters</b>			<b>Detail View</b>		

**NOTE:** This page is updated every 5 seconds.

### Diagnostic Information

This page shows the statistics for each port on the CPU. This information is associated with the configuration of the Ethernet ports ([see page 37](#)) and the configuration of the service/extended port ([see page 165](#)).

The names of active ports are green. The names of inactive ports are gray.

Reset or expand the available information with these buttons:

- **Reset Counters:** Reset all dynamic counters to 0.
- **Detail View:** Expand the list of port statistics.

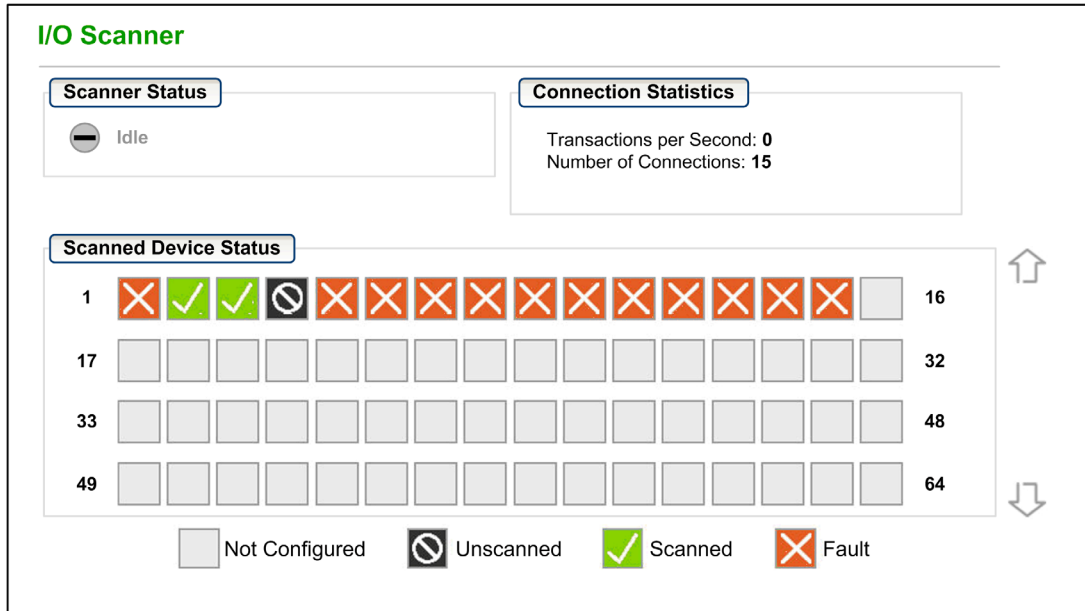
### Detail View

Click **Detail View** to expand the list of parameters:

## I/O Scanner

### Open the Page

Access the **I/O Scanner** page from the **Diagnostics** tab (**Menu** → **Connected Devices** → **Scanner Status**):



**NOTE:** This page is updated every 5 seconds.

### Diagnostic Information

This table describes the scanner status and connection statistics:

<b>Scanner Status</b>	<b>Enabled</b>	The I/O scanner is enabled.
	<b>Disabled</b>	The I/O scanner is disabled.
	<b>Idle</b>	The I/O scanner is enabled but not running.
	<b>Unknown</b>	The I/O scanner returns unexpected values from the device.
<b>Connection Statistics</b>	<b>Transactions per Second</b>	
	<b>Number of Connections</b>	

In the **Scanned Device Status** display, the colors that appear in each block indicate these states for specific remote devices:

Color	Status
gray	There is an unconfigured device.
black	The scanning of the specific device has been intentionally disabled.
green	A device is being scanned successfully.
red	A device that is being scanned is returning detected errors.

# Messaging

## Open the Page

Access the **Messaging** page from the **Diagnostics** tab (**Menu** → **Connected Devices** → **Messaging**):

Messaging

Messaging Statistics

Messages Sent: 6513

Messages Received: 6516

Success Rate: 100.00%

Active Connections

Remote Address	Remote Port	Local Port	Type	Msgs. Sent	Msgs. Received	Errors
127.0.0.1	65359	502	0	2173	2172	0

**NOTE:** This page is updated every 5 seconds.

## Diagnostic Information

This page shows current information for open TCP connections on port 502:

- **Messaging Statistics:** This field contains the total number of sent and received messages on port 502. These values are not reset when the port 502 connection is closed. Therefore, the values indicate the number of messages that have been sent or received since the module was started.
- **Active Connections:** This field shows the connections that are active when the **Messaging** page is refreshed.




## QoS

### Open the Page

Access the **QoS** (quality of service) page from the **Diagnostics** tab (**Menu** → **Services** → **QoS**):

## QoS

Service Status

 **Enabled**

Precision Time Protocol

DSCP PTP Event Priority	<b>15104</b>
DSCP PTP General	<b>12032</b>

EtherNet/IP Traffic

DSCP Value for I/O data Schedule Priority Messages	<b>14080</b>
DSCP Value for Explicit Messages	<b>6912</b>


Modbus/TCP Traffic

DSCP Value for I/O Messages	<b>11008</b>
DSCP Value for Explicit Messages	<b>6912</b>

Network Time Protocol Traffic

DSCP Value for Network Time	<b>15104</b>
-----------------------------	--------------

**Detail View**



**NOTE:** This page is updated every 5 seconds.

### Diagnostic Information

This page displays information about the QoS service. Configure this service in Unity Pro ([see page 164](#)).

When you enable QoS, the module adds a differentiated services code point (DSCP) tag to each Ethernet packet it transmits, thereby indicating the priority of that packet.

# Network Time Service

## Open the Page

Access the **Network Time Service** page from the **Diagnostics** tab (**Menu** → **Services** → **NTP**):

### Network Time Service

Service Status

Server Status

Server Type

? Unknown

? 0.33.0.65

Unknown

DST Status

Current Date

Current Time

? Unknown

7/24/2013

08:22:47

Time Zone

UTC+02:00

NTP Service Statistics

Number of Requests: 1835026

Number of Responses: 655426

Number of Errors: 498775

Success Rate: 8.33%

Last Error: 0x01

**NOTE:** This page is updated every 5 seconds.

## Diagnostic Information

This page displays information about the NTP service. Configure this service in Unity Pro (see page 161).

The Network Time Service synchronizes computer clocks over the Internet for the purposes of event recording (sequence events), event synchronization (trigger simultaneous events), or alarm and I/O synchronization (time stamp alarms):

Field	Description	
Service Status	Running	The NTP service is correctly configured and running.
	Disabled	The NTP service is disabled.
	Unknown	The NTP service status is unknown.

Field	Description	
<b>Server Status</b>	green	The server is connected and running.
	red	A bad server connection is detected.
	gray	The server status is unknown.
<b>Server Type</b>	<b>Primary</b>	A primary server polls a master time server for the current time.
	<b>Secondary</b>	A secondary server requests the current time only from a primary server.
<b>DST Status</b>	<b>Running</b>	DST (daylight saving time) is configured and running.
	<b>Disabled</b>	DST is disabled.
	<b>Unknown</b>	The DST status is unknown.
<b>Current Date</b>	This is the current date in the selected time zone.	
<b>Current Time</b>	This is the current time in the selected time zone.	
<b>Time Zone</b>	This field shows the time zone in terms of plus or minus Universal Time, Coordinated (UTC).	
<b>NTP Service Statistics</b>	These fields show the current values for service statistics.	
	<b>Number of Requests</b>	This field shows the total number of requests sent to the NTP server.
	<b>Success Rate</b>	This field shows the percentage of successful requests out of the total number of requests.
	<b>Number of Responses</b>	This field shows the total number of responses received from the NTP server.
	<b>Last Error</b>	This field contains the error code of the last error that was detected during the transmission of an email message to the network.
	<b>Number of Errors</b>	This field contains the total number of email messages that could not be sent to the network or that have been sent but not acknowledged by the server.

# Redundancy

## Open the Page

Access the **Redundancy** page on the **Diagnostic** tab (**Menu** → **Services** → **Redundancy**):

# Redundancy

Service Status

✓ Running

Last Topology Change

6/17/2013 2:08:22 PM

Router Bridge Statistics

Bridge ID: 00 00 00 00 54 00 01 14  
Bridge Priority: 0

Internal Port

Port 1

Port 2

Port 3

Backplane Port

RSTP Disabled  
Non-STP Port  
Priority: 0

RSTP Disabled  
Non-STP Port  
Priority: 0

RSTP Disabled  
Disabled Port  
Priority: 0

RSTP Disabled  
Disabled Port  
Priority: 0

RSTP Disabled  
Non-STP Port  
Priority: 0

**NOTE:** This page is updated every 5 seconds.

## Diagnostic Information

This page displays values from the RSTP configuration in Unity Pro ([see page 157](#)):

Field	Description	
Service Status	This is the status ( <b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b> ) of the RSTP bridge on the corresponding CPU.	
Last Topology Change	These values represent the date and time that the last topology change was received for the corresponding <b>Bridge ID</b> .	
Redundancy Status	green	The designated Ethernet port is learning or formatting information.
	yellow	The designated Ethernet port is discarding information.
	gray	RSTP is disabled for the designated Ethernet port.
Router Bridge Statistics	Bridge ID	This unique bridge identifier is the concatenation of the bridge RSTP priority and the MAC address.
	Bridge Priority	In Unity Pro, configure the RSTP operating state ( <a href="#">see page 157</a> ) of the <b>Bridge ID</b> .

## Alarm Viewer

### Open the Page

Access the **Alarm Viewer** page from the **Diagnostics** tab (**Menu** → **System** → **Alarm Viewer**):

### Alarm Viewer

Filter Alarms:

Alarm Log

Type	Status	Message	Occurance	Acknowledged	Zone
	OK		Invalid Date		0
	OK		Invalid Date		0

**NOTE:** This page is updated every 5 seconds.

### Diagnostic Information

The **Alarm Viewer** page reports detected application errors. You can read, filter, and sort information about alarm objects on this page. Adjust the type of information displayed by the **Alarm Viewer** in the **Filter Alarms** box.

This table describes the components of the page:

Column	Value	
<b>Type</b>	This column describes the alarm type.	
<b>Status</b>	<b>STOP</b>	You need to acknowledge the alarm.
	<b>ACK</b>	An alarm has been acknowledged.
	<b>OK</b>	An alarm does not require acknowledgment.
<b>Message</b>	This column contains the text of the alarm message.	
<b>Occurance</b>	This column contains the date and time that the alarm occurred.	
<b>Acknowledged</b>	This column reports the acknowledged status of the alarm.	
<b>Zone</b>	This column contains the area or geographical zone from which the alarm comes (0: common area).	



---

# Chapter 9

## M580 CPU Programming and Operating Modes

---

### Overview

This chapter provides information on M580 CPU I/O exchanges, tasks, memory structure, and operating modes.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
9.1	I/O and Task Management	296
9.2	BME P58 xxxx CPU Memory Structure	300
9.3	BME P58 xxxx CPU Operating Modes	301

# Section 9.1

## I/O and Task Management

---

### Overview

This section presents information on M580 I/O addressing and management, tasks allowed, and I/O scanning capabilities.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
I/O Exchanges	297
CPU Tasks	299



## I/O Exchanges

### I/O Vision

Each module uses a structure that represents inputs, outputs, control, and diagnostic data. The structures can be represented using:

- topological addressing / IODDT
- Device DDT

I/O Module Location	I/O Family	Topological Addressing / IODDT	Device DDT
local rack	(e)X80	X	X
	Premium	X	–
RIO	(e)X80	–	X
distributed equipment	Schneider Electric or third party	–	X
<b>X</b> Supported. When both visions are supported, select one of the exchange types when adding the equipment. <b>–</b> Not supported.			

### Adding an I/O Module in Unity Pro

When you insert an I/O module on a rack in Unity Pro, the type of addressing appears in the bottom of the **New Device** dialog box. Choose between the following:

- **I/O data type: Topological** (default)
- **I/O data type: Device DDT**

**NOTE:** If you want to change the type of addressing you selected when you added an I/O module to your application, delete the module from your application and then insert the module again selecting the appropriate addressing type.

### Exchange Types

I/O modules in an M580 system can be controlled, read, or written with 2 types of exchanges:

- implicit exchanges  
Implicit exchanges are performed automatically on each cycle of the task (MAST, FAST, AUX0, AUX1) associated with the I/O modules. They are used to read inputs from and write outputs o the modules.
- explicit exchanges  
Explicit exchanges are performed on application request. They are typically for detailed diagnostics and to set/read command and adjust parameters. They use specific function blocks. An acknowledgment or reply is sent once the requested action is performed. This reply may be received a few cycles after the request was sent.

**NOTE:** Explicit exchanges are performed in the MAST task.

### Explicit Exchanges

Function block usage depends on the module location and I/O vision selected for the module:

I/O Module Location	I/O Vision	Function Block
Local rack	Topological addressing / IODDT	READ_PARAM
		READ_STS
		READ_TOPO_ADDR
		RESTORE_PARAM
		SAVE_PARAM
		WRITE_CMD
		WRITE_PARAM
		READ_VAR
		WRITE_VAR
		DATA_EXCH
	Device DDT	READ_PARAM_MX
		READ_STS_MX
		<b>NOTE:</b> MOD_FAULT parameter is not automatically updated; perform a READ_STS_MX.
		RESTORE_PARAM_MX
		SAVE_PARAM_MX
		WRITE_CMD_MX
		WRITE_PARAM_MX
RIO and local rack	Device DDT	READ_STS_MX
		WRITE_CMD_MX

The function blocks mentioned in previous table are detailed in the *Explicit Exchange* part of *Unity Pro, I/O Management, Block Library manual*, and in the *Extended* part of *Unity Pro, Communication, Block Library manual*.

## CPU Tasks

### Introduction

An M580 CPU can execute single-task and multi-task applications. Unlike a single-task application which only executes the MAST task, a multi-task application defines the priorities of each task.

There are 4 tasks available (see *Application Program Structure* chapter in *Unity Pro Program Languages and Structure Reference Manual*) and 2 types of event tasks:

- MAST
- FAST
- AUX0
- AUX1
- I/O event in a local rack only
- timer event in a local rack only

### Task Characteristics

The time model, task period, and maximum number of tasks per CPU are defined as follows:

Task	Time Model	Task Period (ms)		BME P58 References			
		Range	Default Value	10•0 (H)	20•0 (H)	30•0	40•0
MAST <sup>(1.)</sup>	cyclic <sup>(2.)</sup> or periodic	1...255	20	1	1	1	1
FAST	periodic	1...255	5	1	1	1	1
AUX0	periodic	10...2550 by 10	100	1	1	1	1
AUX1	periodic	10...2550 by 10	200	1	1	1	1
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. MAST task is mandatory.</li> <li>2. When set to cyclic mode, the minimum cycle time is 8 ms if there is a RIO network and 1 ms if there is no RIO network in the system.</li> </ol>							

## Section 9.2

### BME P58 xxxx CPU Memory Structure

---

#### Memory Structure

##### CPU Memory

3 types of memories are available in a BME P58 xxxx CPU:

- non-persistent application RAM: run the application program and store temporary data
- flash memory: back up the application program and a copy of %MW values
- optional SD memory card: store application and data in parallel to the CPU flash memory, allowing a fast CPU hardware replacement

##### Application Download to the CPU Memory

CPU memory involved during an application download from a programming terminal:

- Application is transferred into the non-persistent application RAM.
- If a memory card is inserted, working and not write protected, then an internal backup is performed in the memory card.
- The application backup is performed in the the flash memory.

**NOTE:** A write protected memory card inserted disables the application download.

##### Application Upload from the CPU Memory

The application upload reads and copies non-persistent application content from RAM to your selected location.

##### Application Online Modification Backup

An application program modification is performed in the CPU non-persistent memory with an automatic backup performed as follows:

- If a memory card is inserted, working and not write protected, then the backup is performed in the memory card.
- The application backup is performed in the flash memory.

**NOTE:** The online modification is disabled when a write protected memory card is inserted.

##### Application Memory Self Modification

The user code may modify the application content (for example to save I/O parameters or replace variables initial value by the current value).

In such a case, only the non-persistent application RAM content is modified.

To back up the application in the memory card and to the flash memory, use the system bit %S66.

# Section 9.3

## BME P58 xxxx CPU Operating Modes

### Overview

This section provides information on the CPU operating modes.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Managing <b>Run/Stop</b> Input	302
Power Cut and Restore	303
Cold Start	305
Warm Restart	308

## Managing Run/Stop Input

### Input Run/Stop

The `%lr.m.c` input can be parameterized to switch the PAC to **Run/Stop** mode as follows:

- Set `%lr.m.c` to 1: The PAC switches to **Run** mode (executing the program).
- Set `%lr.m.c` to 0: The PAC switches to **Stop** mode (stopping program execution).

**NOTE:** A Stop command always takes priority over a Run command. A Stop command sent from a terminal or via the network has priority over the `%lr.m.c` input.

**NOTE:** An error detected on the Run/Stop input causes the PAC to switch to **Stop** mode.

**NOTE:** Do not enable this option if the associated discrete input is mapped in state RAM because this inhibits the start-up of the PAC.

### Memory Protect

The input `%lr.m.c` can be parameterized to protect the internal application RAM and the memory card as follows:

- `%lr.m.c` to 0: The internal application and the memory card **are not** protected.
- `%lr.m.c` to 1: The internal application and the memory card **are** protected.

**NOTE:** To cancel the protection, disconnect this input before building the modification.

### Managing Run/Stop Remote Access

When configuring the M580 CPU, you can help prevent remote commands/requests from accessing the CPU **Run/Stop** modes. Select the respective **Run/Stop input** and **Run/Stop only by input** check boxes according to the following table parameters to determine the type of remote access for your system.

Run/Stop Input	Run/Stop Only By Input	Description
–	–	Allows remote access to run/stop input by request only.
X	–	Allows remote access to run/stop input.
X	X	Denies remote access to run/stop input.
X: check box selected –: check box deselected		

## Power Cut and Restore

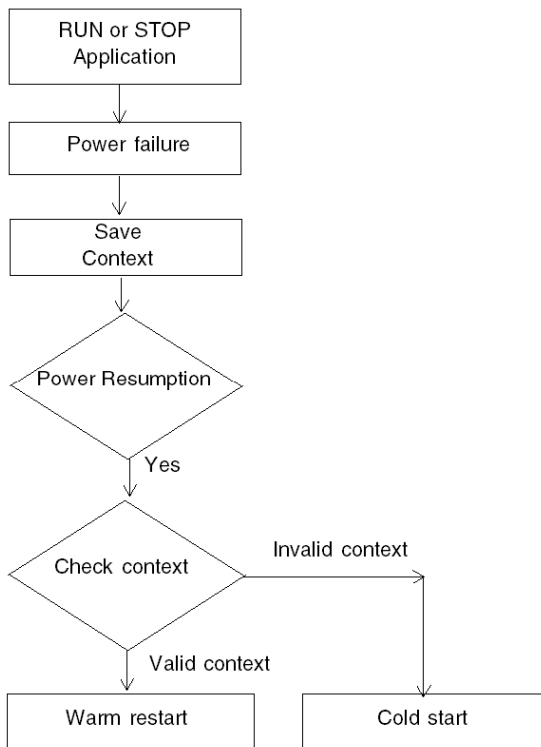
### Introduction

If the duration of the outage is shorter than the power supply filtering time, it has no effect on the program which continues to run normally.

If the duration of the outage is longer than the power supply filtering time, the program is interrupted and power restoration processing is activated. The CPU then restarts in warm restart or cold start as described in the following diagram.

### Illustration

Power cycle phases:



### Power Supply Filtering Times

The BMX CPS 2000, BMX CPS 3500, and BMX CPS 3540T power supplies, which provide Vac power, have a filtering time of 10 ms.

The BMX CPS 2010 and BMX CPS 3020 power supplies, which provide Vdc power, have a filtering time of 1 ms.

### Power Outage Processing Phases

When power to the system is lost, it recovers in 3 phases:

Phase	Description
1	On power outage, the system saves the application context, the values of application variables, and the state of the system on internal flash memory.
2	The system sets all the outputs into fallback state (state defined in configuration).
3	<p>On power restoral, some actions and checks are done to verify if warm restart is available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● restore internal flash memory application context</li><li>● verify application and context validity</li></ul> <p>If all checks are correct a warm restart (<a href="#">see page 308</a>) is performed, otherwise a cold start (<a href="#">see page 305</a>) is carried out.</p>



## Cold Start

### CPU Cold Start Causes and States

Cold start causes and resulting CPU states:

Cause	Resulting CPU State
End of the application download.	STOP
Application restored from flash memory is different than the one in the non-persistent application RAM. Use case: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● application restored from a memory card if a compatible memory card is in the card slot</li> <li>● application restored from the CPU flash memory</li> </ul>	STOP <sup>(1.)</sup>
Application restored from persistent memory with Unity Pro command <b>PLC →Project backup →...</b> is different than the one in the non-persistent application RAM: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● application restored from a memory card if a compatible memory card is in the card slot</li> <li>● application restored from the CPU flash memory</li> </ul>	STOP <sup>(1.)</sup>
Power supply <b>RESET</b> button pressed.	STOP <sup>(1.)</sup>
Power supply <b>RESET</b> button pressed less than 500 ms after a power down.	STOP <sup>(1.)</sup>
Power supply <b>RESET</b> button pressed after a CPU detected error, except in the case of a watchdog detected error (halt state).	STOP <sup>(2.)</sup>
Init requested with one of the 3 following means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● %S0 system bit set to 0</li> <li>● INIT request</li> <li>● <b>Cold Start</b> command in Unity Pro</li> </ul>	The CPU does not change its state. It only initializes the application. It is a simulation of cold start.
Restoral after power down with a loss of context.	STOP <sup>(1.)</sup>
<b>1.</b> CPU state is set to RUN if <b>Automatic start in Run</b> option is selected. <b>2.</b> <b>Automatic start in Run</b> option does not set the CPU to RUN state.	

Loading or transferring an application to the CPU involves initialization of unlocated variables.

You need to assign a topological address to the data if the process requires keeping the current values of the data when transferring the application.

To save the located variables, avoid the initialization of the %MWi by unchecking **Initialize %MWi on cold start** parameter in the CPU configuration screen.

**NOTE:** Pressing the **RESET** button on the power supply resets %MWi and initial values are loaded.

**NOTE:** Do not press the **RESET** button on the power supply if you do not want %MWi to be reset and loaded with initial values.

## Executing a Cold Start

Use these steps to perform a cold start:

Phase	Description
1	<p>The startup is performed in RUN or in STOP state depending on one of the 2 following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The status of the <b>Automatic start in Run</b> parameter defined in the CPU configuration. If the parameter is selected, the start will be performed in RUN.</li> <li>• The state of the I/O defined in the <b>Run/Stop input</b> parameter in the CPU configuration.</li> </ul> <p>Program execution is resumed at the start of the cycle.</p>
2	<p>The system carries out the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disable FAST, AUX, and event tasks.</li> <li>• MAST task is executed until the end of data initialization.</li> <li>• Initialize data (bits, I/O image, words, and so on) with the initial values defined in the data editor (value set to 0 if no other initial value has been defined). For %MW words, the values can be retrieved on a cold start when these conditions are met: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>Initialize %MWi on cold start</b> parameter is not checked in the CPU configuration screen,</li> <li>• The internal flash memory has a valid backup (see %SW96).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the number of %MW words exceeds the backup size during the save operation the remaining words are set to 0.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Initialize elementary function blocks (initial data).</li> <li>• Initialize data declared in the DFBs: either to 0 or to the initial value declared in the DFB type.</li> <li>• Initialize system bits and words.</li> <li>• Position charts to initial steps.</li> <li>• Cancel any forcing action.</li> <li>• Initialize message and event queues.</li> <li>• Send configuration parameters to all I/O and application-specific modules.</li> </ul>
3	<p>To start a cycle, the system performs these tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Relaunch the MAST task with the %S0 (cold start) and %S13 (first cycle in RUN) system bits set to 1. %SW10 (first cycle after cold start) system word is set to 0.</li> <li>• Reset the %S0 and %S13 system bits to 0 and set each bit of %SW10 system word to 1 at the end of this first cycle of the MAST task.</li> <li>• Activate the FAST and AUX tasks and event processing at the end of the first cycle of the MAST task.</li> </ul>

## Processing a Cold Start by Program

Test %SW10.0 system bit to detect a cold start and adapt the program consequently.

**NOTE:** It is possible to test the %S0 system bit on the first execution cycle if the **Automatic start in RUN** parameter is selected. If it is not selected, the CPU starts in STOP state and the bit %S0 switches to 1 on the first cycle after start (not visible for the program).

### Output Changes

As soon as a power outage is detected the outputs are set in the fallback position configured (programmed fallback value or current value).

On power down, the outputs are not driven and remain at 0.

After power restoral, the outputs remain at 0 until they are updated by the task.

# Warm Restart

## Introduction

A warm restart occurs after a power cycle.

## Executing a Warm Restart

Phase	Description
1	Program execution does not resume from the element where the power outage occurred. The remaining program is discarded during the warm restart. Each task restarts from the beginning.
2	The system carries out the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Restore the application variables value,</li><li>● Set %S1 system bit to 1.</li><li>● Initialize message and event queues,</li><li>● Send configuration parameters to all I/O and application-specific modules,</li><li>● If the application was reserved, the CPU removes the reservation.</li><li>● Reset communication.</li><li>● If needed, the CPU configures the I/O modules with the current adjustment parameters.</li><li>● Disable FAST, AUX, and event tasks.</li></ul>
3	The system performs a restart cycle during which it: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Restarts the MAST task from beginning of cycle,</li><li>● Sets %S1 system bit to 0 when the MAST task is completed.</li><li>● Enable FAST, AUX, and event tasks at the end of the first MAST task cycle.</li><li>● CPU state set to the value before power down.</li></ul> If the CPU was in HALT state, it is set to STOP state.

## Processing a Warm Restart by Program

On warm restart, if the application needs to be processed in a particular way, the program needs to test that %S1 system bit is set to 1 at the start of the MAST task program.

## SFC Warm Restart Specific Features

The warm start on Modicon M580 CPU is not considered as a real warm start by the CPU. SFC interpreter does not depend on tasks.

SFC publishes a ws\_data memory area to the OS that contains SFC section-specific data to be saved on power down.

At the beginning of chart processing the active steps are saved to ws\_data and processing is marked to be in a section that is essential to the applicatoin. At the end of chart processing the essential section is unmarked.

If a power down hits into the essential section, it could be detected if this state is active at the beginning (as the scan is aborted and MAST task is restarted from the beginning). In this case, the workspace may be inconsistent and is restored from the saved data.

Additional information from `SFCSTEP_STATE` variable in located data area is used to reconstruct the state machine.

When a power down occurs, the following is performed:

- During first scan, `%S1 = 1`, MAST task is executed but FAST and event tasks are not executed.

On power restoral, the following is performed:

- clear chart, deregister diagnostics, keep set actions
- set steps from saved area
- set step times from `SFCSTEP_STATE`
- suppress execution of the  $P / \overline{P1}$  actions
- restores elapsed time for timed actions

**NOTE:** SFC interpreter is independent, if the transition is valid, the SFC chart evolves while `%S1 = 1`.

### Output Changes

As soon as a power outage is detected the outputs are set in the fallback position configured: either programmed fallback value or current value.

After power restoral, the outputs remain at 0 until they are updated by the task.



---

# Appendices

---







---

# Appendix A

## Derived Data Types

---

### Device DDT Names for the M580 CPU

#### Introduction

This topic describes the Unity Pro **Device DDT** tab for an M580 CPU in a local rack. A derived data type (DDT) is a set of elements with the same type (ARRAY) or with different types (structure).

The default device DDT name is `BMEP58_ECPU`, of `T_BMEP58_ECPU` type.

#### Access the Device DDT Tab

In Unity Pro:

Step	Action	Comment
1	Open the <b>Data Editor</b> in the Unity Pro <b>Project Browser</b> .	Path: <b>Tools</b> → <b>Data Editor</b>
2	Select the <b>Device DDT</b> checkbox.	

#### Parameters

Use the Unity Pro **Device DDT** tab to configure parameters for the CPU RIO head on the local rack:

Parameter		Description
Implicit device DDT	Name	the default name of the device DDT
	Type	module type (uneditable)
Goto details		link to the DDT data editor screen

#### Standalone Configuration

This table describes the fields in the `BMEP58_ECPU` implicit device DDT type that is used with the CPU RIO head module in standalone configurations.

`ETH_STATUS` (WORD):

Name	Type	Bit	Description
PORT1_LINK	BOOL	0	0 = ETH 1 link is down.
			1 = ETH 1 link is up.
PORT2_LINK	BOOL	1	0 = ETH 2 link is down.
			1 = ETH 2 link is up.

Name	Type	Bit	Description
PORT3_LINK	BOOL	2	0 = ETH 3 link is down. 1 = ETH 3 link is up.
ETH_BKP_PORT_LINK	BOOL	3	0 = Ethernet backplane link is down. 1 = Ethernet backplane link is up.
HSBY_LINK	BOOL	4	(reserved)
REDUNDANCY_STATUS	BOOL	5	0 = Redundant path is not available. 1 = Redundant path is available.
SCANNER_OK	BOOL	6	0 = Scanner is not present. 1 = Scanner is present.
GLOBAL_STATUS	BOOL	7	0 = At least 1 service is not operating normally. 1 = All services are operating normally.
(reserved)	BYTE	8–15	(reserved)

**NOTE:** You can monitor breaks in the RIO main ring by diagnosing the `REDUNDANCY_STATUS` bits in the CPU module device DDT. The system detects and reports in this bit a main ring cable break that persists for at least 5 seconds.

Within the `REDUNDANCY_STATUS` bit:

- 0: The cable is broken or the device is stopped.
- 1: The loop is present and healthy.

`SERVICE_STATUS` (WORD):

Name	Type	Bit	Description
RSTP_SERVICE	BOOL	0	0 = RSTP service is not operating normally. 1 = RSTP service is operating normally or disabled.
(reserved)	BOOL	1	(reserved)
PORT502_SERVICE	BOOL	2	0 = Port 502 service is not operating normally. 1 = Port 502 service is operating normally or disabled.
SNMP_SERVICE	BOOL	3	0 = SNMP service is not operating normally. 1 = SNMP service is operating normally or disabled.
MAIN_IP_ADDRESS_STATUS	BOOL	4	0 = The main IP address is a duplicate or unassigned. 1 = The main IP address is unique and valid.

Name	Type	Bit	Description
ETH_BKP_FAILURE	BOOL	5	0 = Ethernet backplane hardware has a detected issue.
			1 = Ethernet backplane hardware is operating properly.
ETH_BKP_ERROR	BOOL	6	0 = Ethernet backplane error detected.
			1 = Ethernet backplane is operating properly.
EIP_SCANNER	BOOL	7	0 = Service not operating normally.
			1 = Service operating normally.
MODBUS_SCANNER	BOOL	8	0 = Service not operating normally.
			1 = Service operating normally.
NTP_SERVER	BOOL	9	0 = SNTP server not operating normally.
			1 = SNTP server operating normally.
SNTP__CLIENT	BOOL	10	0 = Service not operating normally.
			1 = Service operating normally.
WEB_SERVER	BOOL	11	0 = Service not operating normally.
			1 = Service operating normally.
FIRMWARE_UPGRADE	BOOL	12	0 = Service not operating normally.
			1 = Service operating normally.
FTP	BOOL	13	0 = Service not operating normally.
			1 = Service operating normally.
FDR_SERVER	BOOL	14	0 = Service not operating normally.
			1 = Service operating normally.
EIP_ADAPTER	BOOL	15	0 = EIP adapter (server) service not operating normally.
			1 = EIP adapter (server) service operating normally.

## SERVICE\_STATUS2 (WORD):

Name	Type	Bit	Description
A_B_IP_ADDRESS_STATUS	BOOL	0	0 = Duplicate IP or no IP address assigned.
			1 = IP addresses correctly assigned.
LLDP_SERVICE	BOOL	1	0 = LLDP service is not operating normally.
			1 = LLDP service is operating normally or disabled.
(reserved)	—	2–15	(reserved)

ETH\_PORT\_1\_2\_STATUS (BYTE):

Name	Bit	Description
Ethernet ports function and RST role coded on 2 bits	0–1	Ethernet port 1 function
	2–3	Ethernet port 1 RSTP role
	4–5	Ethernet port 2 function
	6–7	Ethernet port 2 RSTP role

Port function and RSTP role features description:

Feature	Value	Description
port function	0	disabled
	1	access port
	2	port mirror
	3	device network port
RSTP role	0	alternate
	1	backup
	2	designated
	3	root

ETH\_PORT\_3\_BKP\_STATUS (BYTE):

Name	Bit	Description
Ethernet ports function and RST role coded on 2 bits	0–1	Ethernet port 3 function
	2–3	Ethernet port 3 RSTP role
	4–5	backplane Ethernet function (2 bits value): <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● 0: backplane without Ethernet network</li><li>● 3: backplane with Ethernet network</li></ul>
	6–7	(reserved)

Port function and RSTP role features description:

Feature	Value	Description
port function	0	disabled
	1	access port
	2	port mirror
	3	device network port

Feature	Value	Description
RSTP role	0	alternate
	1	backup
	2	designated
	3	root

IN\_PACKETS (UINT):

Type	Bit	Description
UINT	0–7	number of packets received on the interface (internal ports)

IN\_ERRORS (UINT):

Type	Bit	Description
UINT	0–7	number of inbound packets that contain detected errors

OUT\_PACKETS (UINT):

Type	Bit	Description
UINT	0–7	number of packets sent on the interface (internal ports)

OUT\_ERRORS (UINT):

Type	Bit	Description
UINT	0–7	number of outbound packets that contain detected errors

CONF\_SIG (UDINT):

Type	Bit	Description
UDINT	0–15	Signatures of all files on local module FDR server

CRA\_CNX\_HEALTH (ARRAY [1...16] OF BYTE):

Name	Type	Rank	Description
CRA_CNX_HEALTH[1]	BYTE	0	CRA module number 1 connection health status.
CRA_CNX_HEALTH[2]	BYTE	1	CRA module number 2 connection health status.
CRA_CNX_HEALTH[3]	BYTE	2	CRA module number 3 connection health status.
...			
CRA_CNX_HEALTH[16]	BYTE	15	CRA module number 16 connection health status.
<b>NOTE:</b> Each byte provides details of input and output per task for a dedicated CRA module: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bit 0: FAST task input</li> <li>• Bit 1: MAST task input</li> <li>• Bit 2: AUX0 task input</li> <li>• Bit 3: AUX1 task input</li> <li>• Bit 4: FAST task output</li> <li>• Bit 5: MAST task output</li> <li>• Bit 6: AUX0 task output</li> <li>• Bit 7: AUX1 task output</li> </ul>			

DEVICE\_CNX\_HEALTH (ARRAY [0..7] OF WORD):

Name	Type	Rank	Description
DEVICE_CNX_HEALTH[0]	WORD	0	1 bit per DIO)
DEVICE_CNX_HEALTH[1]	WORD	1	1 bit per DIO)
DEVICE_CNX_HEALTH[2]	WORD	2	1 bit per DIO)
DEVICE_CNX_HEALTH[3]	WORD	3	1 bit per DIO)
DEVICE_CNX_HEALTH[4]	WORD	4	1 bit per DIO)
DEVICE_CNX_HEALTH[5]	WORD	5	1 bit per DIO)
DEVICE_CNX_HEALTH[6]	WORD	6	1 bit per DIO)
DEVICE_CNX_HEALTH[7]	WORD	7	1 bit per DIO)
<b>NOTE:</b> DIO number = DIO device number from the mapping list - 32. For example, DIO device number 37 in the mapping list corresponds to DIO number 5 (37 - 32) in the above table.			

DIO\_CTRL (T\_DIO\_CTRL):

Name	Type	Rank	Description
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_256_271	WORD	0	device connection CTRL bits 256 to 271
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_272_287	WORD	1	device connection CTRL bits 272 to 287
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_288_303	WORD	2	device connection CTRL bits 288 to 303
<b>NOTE:</b> Device connection refers to objects containing inside connections, each bit referring to a specific task.			

Name	Type	Rank	Description
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_304_319	WORD	3	device connection CTRL bits 304 to 319
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_320_335	WORD	4	device connection CTRL bits 320 to 335
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_336_351	WORD	5	device connection CTRL bits 336 to 351
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_352_367	WORD	6	device connection CTRL bits 352 to 367
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_368_383	WORD	7	device connection CTRL bits 368 to 383
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_384_399	WORD	8	device connection CTRL bits 384 to 399
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_400_415	WORD	9	device connection CTRL bits 400 to 415
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_416_431	WORD	10	device connection CTRL bits 416 to 431
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_432_447	WORD	11	device connection CTRL bits 432 to 447
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_448_463	WORD	12	device connection CTRL bits 448 to 463
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_464_479	WORD	13	device connection CTRL bits 464 to 479
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_480_495	WORD	14	device connection CTRL bits 480 to 495
DEVICE_CNX_CTRL_496_511	WORD	15	device connection CTRL bits 496 to 511
<b>NOTE:</b> Device connection refers to objects containing inside connections, each bit referring to a specific task.			







## 0-9

### **%MW**

According to the CEI standard, %MW indicates a language object of type memory word.

## A

### **adapter**

An adapter is the target of real-time I/O data connection requests from scanners. It cannot send or receive real-time I/O data unless it is configured to do so by a scanner, and it does not store or originate the data communications parameters necessary to establish the connection. An adapter accepts explicit message requests (connected and unconnected) from other devices.

## B

### **BCD**

(*binary-coded decimal*) Binary encoding of decimal numbers.

## C

### **CCOTF**

(*change configuration on the fly*) A feature of Unity Pro that allows a CPU hardware change in the system configuration while the system is operating and not impacting other active operations.

### **CIP™**

(*common industrial protocol*) A comprehensive suite of messages and services for the collection of manufacturing automation applications (control, safety, synchronization, motion, configuration and information). CIP allows users to integrate these manufacturing applications with enterprise-level Ethernet networks and the internet. CIP is the core protocol of EtherNet/IP.

### **CPU**

(*central processing unit*) The CPU, also known as the processor or controller, is the brain of an industrial manufacturing process. It automates a process as opposed to relay control systems. CPUs are computers suited to survive the harsh conditions of the industrial environment.

## D

### DDT

(*derived data type*) A derived data type is a set of elements with the same type (`ARRAY`) or with different types (structure).

### determinism

For a defined application and architecture, you can predict that the delay between an event (change of value of an input) and the corresponding change of a controller output is a finite time  $t$ , smaller than the deadline required by your process.

### Device DDT (DDDT)

A Device DDT is a DDT predefined by the manufacturer and not modifiable by user. It contains the I/O language elements of an I/O module.

### device network

An Ethernet-based network within an RIO network that contains both RIO and distributed equipment. Devices connected on this network follow specific rules to allow RIO determinism.

### DHCP

(*dynamic host configuration protocol*) An extension of the BOOTP communications protocol that provides for the automatic assignment of IP addressing settings, including IP address, subnet mask, gateway IP address, and DNS server names. DHCP does not require the maintenance of a table identifying each network device. The client identifies itself to the DHCP server using either its MAC address, or a uniquely assigned device identifier. The DHCP service utilizes UDP ports 67 and 68.

### DIO

(*distributed I/O*) Legacy term for distributed equipment. DRSs use DIO ports to connect distributed equipment.

### DIO cloud

A group of distributed equipment that is not required to support RSTP. DIO clouds require only a single (non-ring) copper wire connection. They can be connected to some of the copper ports on DRSs, or they can be connected directly to the CPU or Ethernet communications modules in the *local rack*. DIO clouds **cannot** be connected to *sub-rings*.

### DRS

(*dual-ring switch*) A ConneXium extended managed switch that has been configured to operate on an Ethernet network. Predefined configuration files are provided by Schneider Electric to downloaded to a DRS to support the special features of the main ring / sub-ring architecture.

### DTM

(*device type manager*) A DTM is a device driver running on the host PC. It provides a unified structure for accessing device parameters, configuring and operating the devices, and troubleshooting devices. DTMs can range from a simple graphical user interface (GUI) for setting device parameters to a highly sophisticated application capable of performing complex real-time calculations for diagnosis and maintenance purposes. In the context of a DTM, a device can be a communications module or a remote device on the network.

See FDT.

## E

### EDS

(*electronic data sheet*) EDS are simple text files that describe the configuration capabilities of a device. EDS files are generated and maintained by the manufacturer of the device.

### Ethernet

A 10 Mb/s, 100 Mb/s, or 1 Gb/s, CSMA/CD, frame-based LAN that can run over copper twisted pair or fiber optic cable, or wireless. The IEEE standard 802.3 defines the rules for configuring a wired Ethernet network; the IEEE standard 802.11 defines the rules for configuring a wireless Ethernet network. Common forms include 10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, and 1000BASE-T, which can utilize category 5e copper twisted pair cables and RJ45 modular connectors.

### EtherNet/IP™

A network communication protocol for industrial automation applications that combines the standard internet transmission protocols of TCP/IP and UDP with the application layer common industrial protocol (CIP) to support both high speed data exchange and industrial control. EtherNet/IP employs electronic data sheets (EDS) to classify each network device and its functionality.

### explicit messaging

TCP/IP-based messaging for Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP. It is used for point-to-point, client/server messages that include both data, typically unscheduled information between a client and a server, and routing information. In EtherNet/IP, explicit messaging is considered class 3 type messaging, and can be connection-based or connectionless.

## F

### FDR

(*fast device replacement*) A service that uses configuration software to replace an inoperable product.

### FDT

(*field device tool*) The technology that harmonizes communication between field devices and the system host.

### FTP

(*file transfer protocol*) A protocol that copies a file from one host to another over a TCP/IP-based network, such as the internet. FTP uses a client-server architecture as well as separate control and data connections between the client and server.

## G

### **gateway**

A gateway device interconnects two different networks, sometimes through different network protocols. When it connects networks based on different protocols, a gateway converts a datagram from one protocol stack into the other. When used to connect two IP-based networks, a gateway (also called a router) has two separate IP addresses, one on each network.

## H

### **HMI**

(*human machine interface*) System that allows interaction between a human and a machine.

### **HTTP**

(*hypertext transfer protocol*) A networking protocol for distributed and collaborative information systems. HTTP is the basis of data communication for the web.

## I

### **implicit messaging**

UDP/IP-based class 1 connected messaging for EtherNet/IP. Implicit messaging maintains an open connection for the scheduled transfer of control data between a producer and consumer. Because an open connection is maintained, each message contains primarily data, without the overhead of object information, plus a connection identifier.

### **IP address**

The 32-bit identifier, consisting of both a network address and a host address assigned to a device connected to a TCP/IP network.

## L

### **local rack**

An M580 rack containing the CPU and a power supply. A local rack consists of one or two racks: the main rack and the extended rack, which belongs to the same family as the main rack. The extended rack is optional.

### **local slave**

The functionality offered by Schneider Electric EtherNet/IP communication modules that allows a scanner to take the role of an adapter. The local slave enables the module to publish data via implicit messaging connections. Local slave is typically used in peer-to-peer exchanges between PACs.

## M

### MAST

A master (MAST) task is a deterministic processor task that is run through its programming software. The MAST task schedules the RIO module logic to be solved in every I/O scan. The MAST task has two sections:

- IN: Inputs are copied to the IN section before execution of the MAST task.
- OUT: Outputs are copied to the OUT section after execution of the MAST task.

### MB/TCP

(*Modbus over TCP protocol*) This is a Modbus variant used for communications over TCP/IP networks.

### Modbus

Modbus is an application layer messaging protocol. Modbus provides client and server communications between devices connected on different types of buses or networks. Modbus offers many services specified by function codes.

## N

### NIM

(*network interface module*) A NIM resides in the first position on an STB island (leftmost on the physical setup). The NIM provides the interface between the I/O modules and the fieldbus master. It is the only module on the island that is fieldbus-dependent — a different NIM is available for each fieldbus.

### NTP

(*network time protocol*) Protocol for synchronizing computer system clocks. The protocol uses a jitter buffer to resist the effects of variable latency.

## P

### PAC

*programmable automation controller*. The PAC is the brain of an industrial manufacturing process. It automates a process as opposed to relay control systems. PACs are computers suited to survive the harsh conditions of the industrial environment.

### port 502

Port 502 of the TCP/IP stack is the well-known port that is reserved for Modbus TCP communications.

## R

### **RIO drop**

One of the three types of RIO modules in an Ethernet RIO network. A RIO drop is an M580 rack of I/O modules that are connected to an Ethernet RIO network and managed by an Ethernet RIO adapter module. A drop can be a single rack or a main rack with an extended rack.

### **RIO network**

An Ethernet-based network that contains 3 types of RIO devices: a local rack, an RIO drop, and a ConneXium extended dual-ring switch (DRS). Distributed equipment may also participate in an RIO network via connection to DRSs.

### **RPI**

*(requested packet interval)* The time period between cyclic data transmissions requested by the scanner. EtherNet/IP devices publish data at the rate specified by the RPI assigned to them by the scanner, and they receive message requests from the scanner at each RPI.

### **RSTP**

*(rapid spanning tree protocol)* Allows a network design to include spare (redundant) links to provide automatic backup paths if an active link stops working, without the need for loops or manual enabling/disabling of backup links.

## S

### **SNMP**

*(simple network management protocol)* Protocol used in network management systems to monitor network-attached devices. The protocol is part of the internet protocol suite (IP) as defined by the internet engineering task force (IETF), which consists of network management guidelines, including an application layer protocol, a database schema, and a set of data objects.

### **SNTP**

*(simple network time protocol)* See NTP.

### **sub-ring**

An Ethernet-based network with a loop attached to the main ring, via a dual-ring switch (DRS) on the main ring. This network contains RIO or distributed equipment.

## T

### **TFTP**

*(trivial file transfer protocol)* A simplified version of *file transfer protocol* (FTP), TFTP uses a client-server architecture to make connections between two devices. From a TFTP client, individual files can be uploaded to or downloaded from the server, using the user datagram protocol (UDP) for transporting data.

**trap**

A trap is an event directed by an SNMP agent that indicates one of these events:

- A change has occurred in the status of an agent.
- An unauthorized SNMP manager device has attempted to get data from (or change data on) an SNMP agent.

**U****UTC**

(*coordinated universal time*) Primary time standard used to regulate clocks and time worldwide (close to former GMT time standard).







## A

- access control
  - security, 153
- add
  - I/O module, 297
- add remote device, 231
- address
  - field bus, 29
  - I/O, 266
- addressing
  - Premium, extended racks, 67
- advanced mode
  - DTM browser, 174
- advanced settings, 166
  - tab, 151
- alarm viewer web page
  - CPU, 293
- altitude, 90
- application
  - legacy, 148
- authorized address
  - security, 153
- authorized devices
  - cyber security, 154
- AUTOTEST
  - state, 24
- AUX0 task
  - CPU, 299
- AUX1 task
  - CPU, 299

## B

- backplane power consumption, 74
- backup, 148
- blocking condition, 136
- BMEP581020
  - CPU, 17
- BMEP582020
  - CPU, 17

- BMEP582040
  - CPU, 17
- BMEP583020
  - CPU, 17
- BMEP583040
  - CPU, 17
- BMEP584020
  - CPU, 17
- BMEP584040
  - CPU, 17
- BMEXBP0400
  - rack, 49
- BMEXBP0800
  - rack, 49
- BMEXBP1200
  - rack, 49
- BMXRMS004GPF, 42
- BMXXBP0400
  - rack, 49
- BMXXBP0600
  - rack, 49
- BMXXBP0800
  - rack, 49
- BMXXBP1200
  - rack, 49
- BMXXCAUSB018 USB cables, 35
- BMXXCAUSB045 USB cables, 35
- BMXXEM010, 111
- BMXXSP0400, 112
- BMXXSP0600, 112
- BMXXSP0800, 112
- BMXXSP1200, 112

## C

- cable
  - extension, 114
  - rack extender, 69
- certifications, 87
- channel properties, 186

## characteristics

- current consumption, 25
- power consumption, 25

## circuit breaker, 122

## cold

- start, 305

## compatibility

- CPU, 140

## CONF\_SIG

- device DDT, 313

## configuration

- CPU, 151
- Unity Pro, 141

## conformity

- tests, 87

## conformity test

- climatic variations, 91
- electromagnetic emissions, 91
- equipment and personnel safety, 91
- immunity to high frequency interference, 91
- immunity to low frequency interference, 91
- mechanical constraints, 91
- protective enclosure, 91

## connection

- diagnostics, 203
- I/O, 206

## connection summary, 216

## consumption

- backplane power, 74
- power, 83

## consumption power calculation table

- CPU, 83

## control network

- connecting to device network via CPU service port, 40

## convert, 148

## CPU

- alarm viewer web page, 293

BMEP581020, 17

BMEP582020, 17

BMEP582040, 17

BMEP583020, 17

BMEP583040, 17

BMEP584020, 17

BMEP584040, 17

compatibility, 140

configuration, 151

diagnostic web page, 279

diagnostics, 135

front panel, 32

I/O scanner web page, 286

install, 125

LED, 135

memory, 300

messaging web page, 288

MTBF, 25

NTP web page, 290

performance web page, 283

physical description, 30

port statistics web page, 285

QoS web page, 289

redundancy web page, 292

role in M580 system, 19

state, 24

status summary web page, 281

task, 299

CPU dimensions, 31

CPU LEDs, 33

CPU power calculation table, 83

CPU scanner service

RIO, DIO, 21

RSTP, 157

CPU service port, 165

connecting device network to control network, 40

CRA\_CNX\_CTRL

device DDT, 313

CRA\_CNX\_HEALTH

device DDT, 313

current consumption, 25

- cyber security
  - authorized devices, 154
- cycle
  - power, 303

## D

- DDDT, 223
- derived data types, 266, 266
- device DDT, 223, 313
- Device DDT, 297
- device discovery, 176
- device editor
  - DTM browser, 180
- device list configuration, 216
- device network
  - connecting to control network via CPU service port, 40
- DEVICE\_CNX\_HEALTH
  - device DDT, 313
- DHCP, 188
- diagnose
  - power supply, 79
- diagnostic web page
  - CPU, 279
- diagnostics, 192
  - bandwidth, 197
  - blocking condition, 136
  - connection, 203
  - CPU, 135
  - CPU LEDs, 33
  - CPU/system error, 139
  - local slave, 203
  - memory card, 43
  - non-blocking condition, 138
  - NTP, 201
  - RSTP, 199
- dimension
  - CPU, 31
  - rack, 75
- DIO scanner service
  - RSTP, 157
  - selecting CPU, 21
- DIO\_CTRL
  - device DDT, 313

- download, 148
  - DTM-based application, 182
- DTM, 168
  - add, 270
  - connecting to device, 175
  - download, 182
- DTM browser
  - advanced mode, 174
  - device editor, 180
- DTM browser menu commands, 171

## E

- EDS file
  - add, 271
  - remove, 275
- EIO scanner service
  - RSTP, 157
- electrical characteristics, 74
- ERROR
  - state, 24
- error
  - system, 139
- ETH\_PORT\_1\_2\_STATUS
  - device DDT, 313
- ETH\_PORT\_3\_BKP\_STATUS
  - device DDT, 313
- ETH\_STATUS
  - device DDT, 313
- Ethernet
  - port, 37
- EtherNet/IP device
  - explicit message, 225
- explicit
  - I/O, 297
- explicit message
  - to EtherNet/IP device, 225
  - to Modbus device, 227
- extended rack, 57
  - TSXRKY12EX, 63
  - TSXRKY4EX, 63
  - TSXRKY6EX, 63
  - TSXRKY8EX, 63
- extender module
  - X80 rack, 60

extension cable, 114  
extension cable, terminator, 69

## F

FAST task  
    CPU, 299  
FDR, 188  
field bus address, 29  
field bus discovery, 176  
firmware  
    upgrade, 45, 72  
front panel  
    CPU, 32  
FTP  
    device DDT, 313  
    SD memory card, 42  
    security, 153  
fuse, 122  
fusing, 122

## G

grounding  
    modules, 110  
    power supply, 108  
    rack, 108  
grounding accessories, 112  
    BMXXSP0400, 112  
    BMXXSP0600, 112  
    BMXXSP0800, 112  
    BMXXSP1200, 112  
    STBXSP3010, 112  
    STBXSP3020, 112

## H

HALT  
    state, 24  
hardened, 46  
hardware catalog  
    updating, 274  
HTTP)  
    security, 153  
humidity, 90

## I

I/O  
    connection, 206  
    explicit, 297  
    implicit, 297  
    local slave, 206  
    management, 296  
I/O module  
    add, 297  
I/O scanner web page  
    CPU, 286  
IDLE  
    state, 24  
implicit  
    I/O, 297  
IN\_ERRORS  
    device DDT, 313  
IN\_PACKETS  
    device DDT, 313  
install  
    CPU, 125  
    local rack, 102  
    memory card, 129  
    modules, 121  
    power supply, 128  
IODDT, 297  
IP address configuration, 156  
IPConfig  
    tab, 151

## L

LED  
    CPU, 135  
LEDs  
    CPU, 33  
legacy  
    application, 148  
line circuit breaker, 122  
line fuse, 122  
line terminator  
    extended rack, 114  
local rack, 51  
    extended, 57  
    install, 102

local slave  
  diagnostics, 203  
  I/O, 206  
logging, 207

## M

management  
  I/O, 296  
  task, 296  
MAST task  
  CPU, 299  
mean time between failures, 74  
memory  
  CPU, 300  
memory card  
  diagnostics, 43  
  FTP, 42  
  install, 129  
menu commands  
  DTM browser, 171  
messaging web page  
  CPU, 288  
Modbus  
  explicit message, 227  
modules  
  grounding, 110  
  install, 121  
MTBF  
  CPU, 25

## N

NOCONF  
  state, 24  
non-blocking condition, 138  
NTP  
  diagnostics, 201  
  RIO scanner service, 161  
  tab, 151  
NTP web page  
  CPU, 290

## O

online action, 209  
  CIP object, 211  
  ping, 213  
  port configuration, 212  
OS DOWNLOAD  
  state, 24  
OUT\_ERRORS  
  device DDT, 313  
OUT\_PACKETS  
  device DDT, 313

## P

panel  
  CPU, front, 32  
performance web page  
  CPU, 283  
physical description  
  CPU, 30  
ping, 213  
port  
  Ethernet, 37  
port function  
  device DDT, 313  
port statistics web page  
  CPU, 285  
power  
  cycle, 303  
  usable, 81  
power calculation table  
  CPU, 83  
power consumption, 25, 83  
  backplane, 74  
power supply  
  diagnose, 79  
  grounding, 108  
  install, 128  
power supply module, 78  
Premium extended rack addressing, 67  
protection device  
  circuit breaker, 122  
  fuse, 122

## Q

- QoS, 164
  - tab, 151
- QoS web page
  - CPU, 289

## R

- rack
  - BMEXBP0400, 49
  - BMEXBP0800, 49
  - BMEXBP1200, 49
  - BMXXBP0400, 49
  - BMXXBP0600, 49
  - BMXXBP0800, 49
  - BMXXBP1200, 49
  - dimension, 75
  - grounding, 108
  - local, remote, Ethernet, X Bus, 51
  - TSXRKY12EX, 63
  - TSXRKY4EX, 63
  - TSXRKY6EX, 63
  - TSXRKY8EX, 63
  - X80, 54
- rack address
  - extended, 57
- rack addressing
  - Premium, extended, 67
- rack extender cable, terminator, 69
- rack extender module, 60, 114
- real-time clock, 26
- redundancy web page
  - CPU, 292
- remote rack, 51
- restart
  - warm, 308
- restore, 148
- RIO scanner service
  - RSTP, 157
  - selecting CPU, 21

## RSTP

- device DDT, 313
- DIO scanner service, 157
- EIO scanner service, 157
- RIO scanner service, 157
  - tab, 151

## RSTP diagnostics, 199

ruggedized, 46

## RUN

- state, 24

## S

### scanner service

- CPU, 21
- RSTP, 157

### SD memory card, 300

- FTP, 42

### security

- access control, 153
- authorized address, 153
- enforce in Unity Pro, 153
- FTP, 153
- HTTP, 153

### Security

- tab, 151

### security

- TFTP, 153
- unlock in Unity Pro, 153

### service port

- connecting device network to control network via CPU, 40
- CPU, 165
- tab, 151

### SERVICE\_STATUS

- device DDT, 313

### SERVICE\_STATUS2

- device DDT, 313

### SNMP

- tab, 151

### standards, 87

### start

- cold, 305
- warm, 308

## state

- AUTOTEST, 24
- CPU, 24
- ERROR, 24
- HALT, 24
- IDLE, 24
- NOCONF, 24
- OS DOWNLOAD, 24
- RUN, 24
- STOP, 24
- WAIT, 24

## status summary web page

- CPU, 281

## STB NIC 2212

- configuring I/O items, 240

## STBXSP3010, 112

## STBXSP3020, 112

## STOP

- state, 24

## summary

- configuration, 269
- connections, 269

## supply voltage, 90

## switch, 163

## Switch

- tab, 151

## system error, 139

**T**

## tab

- advanced settings, 151
- IPConfig, 151
- NTP, 151
- QoS, 151
- RSTP, 151
- Security, 151
- Service Port, 151
- SNMP, 151
- Switch, 151

## task

- CPU, 299
- management, 296

## temperature, 90

## terminator

- rack extender, 69

## tests

- conformity, 87

## TFTP

- security, 153

## TSXRKY12EX

- rack, 63

## TSXRKY4EX

- rack, 63

## TSXRKY6EX

- rack, 63

## TSXRKY8EX

- rack, 63

**U**

## Unity Pro

- configuration, 141

- download DTM-based application, 182

- upload application, 183

## upgrade

- firmware, 45, 72

## upload, 183

## usable power, 81

## USB

- cables, 35

- pin assignments, 35

- transparency, 35

**V**

## voltage

- supply, 90

**W**

## WAIT

- state, 24

## warm

- restart, 308

- start, 308

web page

- CPU alarm viewer, 293
- CPU diagnostic, 279
- CPU I/O scanner, 286
- CPU messaging, 288
- CPU NTP, 290
- CPU performance, 283
- CPU port statistics, 285
- CPU QoS web page, 289
- CPU redundancy, 292
- CPU status summary, 281

**X**

- X80 rack, 54
- X80 rack extender module, 60